

Volume 1

BRUNNER & SUDDARTH'S

TEXTBOOK OF

Medical-Surgical Nursing

15TH EDITION

Volume 1

BRUNNER & SUDDARTH'S
TEXTBOOK OF
Medical-Surgical
Nursing

15TH EDITION

Janice L. Hinkle, PhD, RN, CNRN

Fellow

Villanova University M. Louise Fitzpatrick

College of Nursing

Villanova, Pennsylvania

Kerry H. Cheever, PhD, RN

Professor *Emerita*

Helen S. Breidegam School of Nursing

Moravian University

Bethlehem, Pennsylvania

**Kristen J. Overbaugh, PhD, RN,
ACNS-BC, CHPN**

Assistant Professor

School of Nursing and Health Sciences

La Salle University

Philadelphia, Pennsylvania



Wolters Kluwer

Philadelphia • Baltimore • New York • London
Buenos Aires • Hong Kong • Sydney • Tokyo

Vice President, Nursing Segment: Julie K. Stegman
Director, Nursing Education and Practice Content: Jamie Blum
Senior Acquisitions Editor: Jonathan Joyce
Senior Development Editor: Meredith L. Brittain
Freelance Development Editor: Rose G. Foltz
Senior Editorial Coordinator: Julie Kostelnik
Marketing Manager: Brittany Clements
Editorial Assistant: Molly Kennedy
Senior Production Project Manager: David Saltzberg
Manager, Graphic Arts and Design: Steve Druding
Art Director: Jennifer Clements
Manufacturing Coordinator: Margie Orzech
Prepress Vendor: Aptara, Inc.

15th Edition

Copyright © 2022 Wolters Kluwer

Copyright © 2018 Wolters Kluwer. Copyright © 2014, 2010 Wolters Kluwer Health | Lippincott Williams & Wilkins. Copyright © 2008 by Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, a Wolters Kluwer business. Copyright © 2004, 2000 by Lippincott Williams & Wilkins. Copyright © 1996 by Lippincott-Raven Publishers. Copyright © 1992, 1988, 1984, 1980, 1975, 1970, 1964 by J. B. Lippincott Company. All rights reserved. This book is protected by copyright. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, including as photocopies or scanned-in or other electronic copies, or utilized by any information storage and retrieval system without written permission from the copyright owner, except for brief quotations embodied in critical articles and reviews. Materials appearing in this book prepared by individuals as part of their official duties as U.S. government employees are not covered by the above-mentioned copyright. To request permission, please contact Lippincott Williams & Wilkins at Two Commerce Square, 2001 Market Street, Philadelphia, PA 19103, via email at permissions@lww.com, or via our website at lww.com (products and services).

Nursing diagnoses in this title are ICNP® nursing diagnoses. ICNP® is owned and copyrighted by the International Council of Nurses (ICN). Reproduced with permission of the copyright holder.

9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

Printed in China

978-1-9751-6828-5

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data
available upon request

Library of Congress Control Number: 2021911712

This work is provided “as is,” and the publisher disclaims any and all warranties, express or implied, including any warranties as to accuracy, comprehensiveness, or currency of the content of this work.

This work is no substitute for individual patient assessment based upon healthcare professionals’ examination of each patient and consideration of, among other things, age, weight, gender, current or prior medical conditions, medication history, laboratory data and other factors unique to the patient. The publisher does not provide medical advice or guidance and this work is merely a reference tool. Healthcare professionals, and not the publisher, are solely responsible for the use of this work including all medical judgments and for any resulting diagnosis and treatments.

Given continuous, rapid advances in medical science and health information, independent professional verification of medical diagnoses, indications, appropriate pharmaceutical selections and dosages, and treatment options should be made and healthcare professionals should consult a variety of sources. When prescribing medication, healthcare professionals are advised to consult the product information sheet (the manufacturer’s package insert) accompanying each drug to verify, among other things, conditions of use, warnings and side effects and identify any changes in dosage schedule or contraindications, particularly if the medication to be administered is new, infrequently used or has a narrow therapeutic range. To the maximum extent permitted under applicable law, no responsibility is assumed by the publisher for any injury and/or damage to persons or property, as a matter of products liability, negligence law or otherwise, or from any reference to or use by any person of this work.

shop.lww.com

*To our fellow nurses who provide comfort and care, and who
instill hope for a healthier world . . .*

*To our nursing faculty colleagues who nurture, guide, and steer
the future of our profession . . .*

*To nursing students who challenge themselves with courage and
conviction . . .*

You inspire us!

Contributors

Contributors to the 15th Edition

Marianne T. Adam, PhD, RN, FNP, CNE

Associate Teaching Professor of Nursing
Campus Coordinator, Nursing
Pennsylvania State University Schuylkill
Schuylkill Haven, Pennsylvania

Chapter 38: Assessment of Digestive and Gastrointestinal Function

Rachel Barish, RN, MSN, ANP-BC, AACCC

Nurse Practitioner, Division of Cardiology
MedStar Georgetown University Hospital Physicians Group
Washington, District of Columbia

Chapter 24: Management of Patients with Structural, Infectious, and Inflammatory Cardiac Disorders

Jennifer L. Bartlett, PhD, RN-BC, CNE, CHSE

Associate Professor
Georgia Baptist College of Nursing of Mercer University
Atlanta, Georgia

Chapter 39: Management of Patients with Oral and Esophageal Disorders

Susan Bartos, PhD, RN, CCRN

Adjunct Professor
Egan School of Nursing & Health Sciences
Fairfield University
Fairfield, Connecticut

Chapter 25: Management of Patients with Complications from Heart Disease

Cynthia Bautista, PhD, APRN, FNCS, FCNS

Associate Professor
Egan School of Nursing and Health Studies
Fairfield University
Fairfield, Connecticut

Chapter 63: Management of Patients with Neurologic Trauma

Tricia Bernecker, PhD, RN

Associate Professor
DeSales University
Center Valley, Pennsylvania

Chapter 22: Management of Patients with Arrhythmias and Conduction Problems

Lisa Bowman, RN, MSN, CRNP, CNRN

Nurse Practitioner
Jefferson Hospital for Neuroscience
Thomas Jefferson University Hospital
Philadelphia, Pennsylvania

Chapter 62: Management of Patients with Cerebrovascular Disorders

Carolyn Bradley, MSN, RN, CCRN

Heart & Vascular Center Nursing Professional Development Specialist
Yale New Haven Hospital
New Haven, Connecticut

Chapter 21: Assessment of Cardiovascular Function

Sherry Burrell, PhD, RN, CNE

Assistant Professor
Villanova University M. Louise Fitzpatrick College of Nursing
Villanova, Pennsylvania

Chapter 12: Oncologic Management

Theresa Capriotti, DO, CRNP, MSN, RN

Clinical Professor
Villanova University M. Louise Fitzpatrick College of Nursing
Villanova, Pennsylvania

Chapter 10: Fluid and Electrolytes

Chapter 33: Assessment and Management of Patients with Allergic Disorders

Jean Colaneri, ACNP-BC, CNN

Acute Care Nurse Practitioner
Albany Medical Center Hospital
Albany, New York

Chapter 48: Management of Patients with Kidney Disorders

Linda Carman Copel, PhD, RN, PMHCNS, BC, CNE, ANEF, NCC, FAPA

Professor
Villanova University M. Louise Fitzpatrick College of Nursing
Villanova, Pennsylvania

Chapter 3: Health Education and Health Promotion

Chapter 5: Stress and Inflammatory Responses

Chapter 53: Assessment and Management of Patients with Male Reproductive Disorders

Patricia Dillon, PhD, RN

Chair of Graduate, RN to BSN, and RN to MSN Programs, & Professor
School of Nursing and Health Sciences
La Salle University
Philadelphia, Pennsylvania

Chapter 56: Management of Patients with Dermatologic Disorders

Nancy Donegan, MPH, RN

Independent Consultant
Washington, District of Columbia

Chapter 66: Management of Patients with Infectious Diseases

Paulette Dorney, PhD, RN, CCRN-K

Associate Professor & Director, Accelerated BSN Program
Helen S. Breidegam School of Nursing
Moravian University
Bethlehem, Pennsylvania

*Chapter 19: Management of Patients with Chest and Lower
Respiratory Tract Disorders*

Phyllis Dubendorf, MSN, RN, CCNS, CNRN, ACNP-BC

Clinical Nurse Specialist
Hospital of the University of Pennsylvania
Philadelphia, Pennsylvania

*Chapter 61: Management of Patients with Neurologic
Dysfunction*

Kimberly Silver Dunker, DNP, MSN, RN, CNE, CNEcl

Dean of Nursing
Fortis Institute
Nashville, Tennessee

Unit-opening case studies

Elizabeth C. Evans, CNP, DNP

Nephrology Nurse Practitioner
Renal Medicine Associates
Albuquerque, New Mexico

*Chapter 27: Assessment and Management of Patients with
Hypertension*

Janice Farber, PhD, RN, CNOR

Associate Professor
Helen S. Breidegam School of Nursing
Moravian University
Bethlehem, Pennsylvania

*Chapter 4: Adult Health and Physical, Nutritional, and Cultural
Assessment*

**Eleanor Fitzpatrick, DNP, RN, CCRN, AGCNS-BC,
ACNP-BC**

Clinical Nurse Specialist
Thomas Jefferson University Hospital
Philadelphia, Pennsylvania

*Chapter 43: Assessment and Management of Patients with Hepatic
Disorders*

Chapter 44: Management of Patients with Biliary Disorders

Anessa M. Foxwell, MSN, CRNP, ACHPN

Predoctoral Fellow, NewCourtland Center for Transitions &
Health

University of Pennsylvania School of Nursing
Nurse Practitioner, Clinical Practices of the University of
Pennsylvania
Philadelphia, Pennsylvania

Chapter 13: Palliative and End-of-Life Care

Stacy M. Fusner, DNP, APRN, CNP

Assistant Professor of Clinical Practice
The Ohio State University College of Nursing
Columbus, Ohio

*Chapter 58: Assessment and Management of Patients with Eye and
Vision Disorders*

Trudy Gaillard, PhD, RN, CDCES, FAHA

Associate Professor
Nicole Wertheim College of Nursing and Health Sciences
Florida International University
Miami, Florida

Chapter 46: Management of Patients with Diabetes

Dawn M. Goodolf, PhD, RN

Associate Professor and Chairperson
Helen S. Breidegam School of Nursing
Moravian University
Bethlehem, Pennsylvania

Chapter 35: Assessment of Musculoskeletal Function

Chapter 67: Emergency Nursing

Chapter 68: Disaster Nursing

Beth Gotwals, PhD, RN

Associate Professor
Helen S. Breidegam School of Nursing
Moravian University
Bethlehem, Pennsylvania

Chapter 2: Medical-Surgical Nursing

Karen D. Groller, PhD, RN, CV-BC, CMSRN

Assistant Professor
Helen S. Breidegam School of Nursing
Moravian University
Bethlehem, Pennsylvania

Chapter 42: Assessment and Management of Patients with Obesity

Debbie A. Gunter, APRN, FNP-BC, ACHPN

Family & Palliative Care Nurse Practitioner
Emory Healthcare Cognitive Neurology Clinic
Nursing Instructor
Emory University School of Nursing
Atlanta, Georgia

*Chapter 18: Management of Patients with Upper Respiratory Tract
Disorders*

Jamie Heffernan, MSN, RN, CCRN-K, NE-BC

Burn Program Manager
New York-Presbyterian Weill Cornell Medicine
New York, New York

Chapter 57: Management of Patients with Burn Injury

Kristina Hidalgo, ACNP-BC

Nurse Practitioner, Division of Cardiology/Electrophysiology
MedStar Washington Hospital Center
Washington, District of Columbia

*Chapter 24: Management of Patients with Structural, Infectious, and
Inflammatory Cardiac Disorders*

Janice L. Hinkle, PhD, RN, CNRN

Fellow

Villanova University M. Louise Fitzpatrick College of Nursing
Villanova, Pennsylvania*Chapter 34: Assessment and Management of Patients with
Inflammatory Rheumatic Disorders***Michael Johnson, PhD, RN, PMH-BC, CNE**

Assistant Professor

Director of Clinical Partnerships

School of Nursing

Nevada State College

Henderson, Nevada

*Chapter 54: Assessment and Management of Patients Who Are
LGBTQ***Debra P. Kantor, PhD, RN, CNE**

Associate Professor of Nursing

Molloy College

The Barbara H. Hagan School of Nursing and Health
Sciences

Rockville Centre, New York

*Chapter 45: Assessment and Management of Patients with Endocrine
Disorders***Sarah Kweeder, MSN, RN-BC, CNOR**

Lead Clinical Nurse Educator, Surgical Services

Main Line Health

Bryn Mawr, Pennsylvania

*Chapter 14: Preoperative Nursing Management**Chapter 15: Intraoperative Nursing Management**Chapter 16: Postoperative Nursing Management***Audra Lewis, PhD, RN, CHSE**

Director, Highland Campus Regional Simulation Center

Austin Community College

Austin, Texas

*Chapter 59: Assessment and Management of Patients with Hearing
and Balance Disorders***Mary Beth Flynn Makic, PhD, CCNS, CCRN-K, FAAN,
FNAP, FCNS**

Professor

University of Colorado College of Nursing

Aurora, Colorado

*Chapter 11: Shock, Sepsis, and Multiple Organ Dysfunction Syndrome***Jane F. Marek, DNP, MSN, RN**

Assistant Professor

Frances Payne Bolton School of Nursing

Case Western Reserve University

Cleveland, Ohio

*Chapter 41: Management of Patients with Intestinal and Rectal
Disorders***Katrina Nice Masterson, DNP, RN, FNP-BC, DCNP**

Educational Coordinator

Randall Dermatology

West Lafayette, Indiana

*Chapter 55: Assessment of Integumentary Function***Jennifer McCaughey, MSN, BS, RNC-MNN, CCE**

Clinical Educator

Women and Children's Services

Inova Fair Oaks Hospital

Fairfax, Virginia

*Chapter 50: Assessment and Management of Patients with Female
Physiologic Processes**Chapter 51: Management of Patients with Female Reproductive Disorders***Salimah H. Meghani, PhD, MBE, RN, FAAN**

Professor & Term Chair of Palliative Care

University of Pennsylvania School of Nursing

Philadelphia, Pennsylvania

*Chapter 13: Palliative and End-of-Life Care***Carin Molfetta, MSN, CRNP, BC**

Nurse Practitioner

Penn Medicine Lancaster General Health

Lancaster, Pennsylvania

*Chapter 52: Assessment and Management of Patients with Breast
Disorders***Sue Monaro, PhD, MN, RN**

Vascular Clinical Nurse Consultant

Concord Repatriation General Hospital

Concord

Senior Clinical Lecturer

Susan Wakil School of Nursing and Midwifery

University of Sydney

New South Wales, Australia

*Chapter 26: Assessment and Management of Patients with Vascular
Disorders and Problems of Peripheral Circulation***Melissa V. Moreda, MSN, APRN, ACCNS-AG, CCRN,
CNRN, SCRN**

Diabetes Educator Clinical Nurse Specialist

Duke Raleigh Hospital

Raleigh, North Carolina

*Chapter 65: Management of Patients with Oncologic or Degenerative
Neurologic Disorders***Kathleen Nokes, PhD, RN, FAAN**

Professor Emerita

Hunter College and Graduate Center, CUNY

New York, New York

*Chapter 32: Management of Patients with Immune Deficiency Disorders***Geraldine M. O'Leary, MSN, RN, FNP-BC**

Clinical Instructor

School of Nursing and Health Sciences

La Salle University

Philadelphia, Pennsylvania

*Chapter 23: Management of Patients with Coronary Vascular Disorders***Mae Ann Pasquale, PhD, RN**

Associate Professor

School of Nursing

Cedar Crest College

Allentown, Pennsylvania

Chapter 37: Management of Patients with Musculoskeletal Trauma

Sue Pugh, MSN, RN, CNRN, CRRN, CNS-BC, FAHA

Neuro Clinical Nurse Specialist/Stroke Coordinator
Sinai Hospital of Baltimore
Baltimore, Maryland

*Chapter 64: Management of Patients with Neurologic Infections,
Autoimmune Disorders, and Neuropathies*

Katrina A. Pyo, PhD, RN, CCRN

Associate Professor
Robert Morris University
Moon Township, Pennsylvania

Chapter 17: Assessment of Respiratory Function

Ann Quinlan-Colwell, PhD, RN-BC, AHN-BC

Pain Management Clinical Nurse Specialist
Educator and Consultant
Wilmington, North Carolina

Chapter 9: Pain Management

Rebecca Wildman Repetti, RN, ANP-BC

Nurse Practitioner, Thoracic Oncology Service
Memorial Sloan Kettering Cancer Center
New York, New York

Chapter 31: Assessment of Immune Function

Denise Rhew, PhD, RN, CNS, CEN

Clinical Nurse Specialist – Emergency Services
Director, Neuro-Progressive Care
Cone Health
Greensboro, North Carolina

Chapter 8: Management of the Older Adult Patient

Marylou V. Robinson, PhD, FNP-C

Olympia, Washington

Chapter 36: Management of Patients with Musculoskeletal Disorders

Tami J. Rogers, PhD, DVM, RN, CNE

Professor of Nursing, Curriculum QA/Course Development
Rasmussen University
Bloomington, Minnesota

Chapter 28: Assessment of Hematologic Function and Treatment Modalities

Sally Russel, MN, CMSRN, CNE

Director, Education Services
American Nephrology Nurses Association
Pitman, New Jersey

Chapter 49: Management of Patients with Urinary Disorders

Catherine Sargent, PhD, RN, BC, AOCNS

Assistant Professor
Gwynedd Mercy University
Gwynedd Valley, Pennsylvania

Chapter 30: Management of Patients with Hematologic Neoplasms

Susan Parnell Scholtz, PhD, RN

Associate Professor
Helen S. Breidegam School of Nursing
Moravian University
Bethlehem, Pennsylvania

Chapter 1: Professional Nursing Practice

Lindsey R. Siewert, RN, MSN, APRN, CCNS, SCRNI

Clinical Nurse Specialist Neuroscience/Stroke Coordinator
Norton Healthcare
Louisville, Kentucky

Chapter 60: Assessment of Neurologic Function

Suzanne C. Smeltzer, RN, EdD, ANEF, FAAN

Richard and Marianne Kreider Endowed Professor in
Nursing for Vulnerable Populations
Villanova University M. Louise Fitzpatrick College of
Nursing
Villanova, Pennsylvania

Chapter 7: Disability and Chronic Illness

Nancy Colobong Smith, MN, ARNP, CNN

Clinical Nurse Specialist – Renal, Dialysis, Transplant
University of Washington Medical Center
Seattle, Washington

Chapter 47: Assessment of Kidney and Urinary Function

Kimberly A. Subasic, PhD, MS, RN, CNE

Professor & Chairperson
Swain Department of Nursing
The Citadel
Charleston, South Carolina

Chapter 6: Genetics and Genomics in Nursing

Mindy L. Tait, PhD, MBA, CRNP, FNP-BC

Associate Professor
School of Nursing and Health Sciences
La Salle University
Philadelphia, Pennsylvania

*Chapter 40: Management of Patients with Gastric and Duodenal
Disorders*

M. Eileen Walsh, PhD, APRN, CVN, FAHA

Associate Dean, Research and Scholarship
Director, College of Nursing Honors Program
Professor, College of Nursing
University of Toledo
Toledo, Ohio

*Chapter 26: Assessment and Management of Patients with Vascular
Disorders and Problems of Peripheral Circulation*

Camille Wendekier, PhD, CNE, RN

Program Director, MSN Leadership/Education
Department of Nursing
St. Francis University
Loretto, Pennsylvania

*Chapter 20: Management of Patients with Chronic Pulmonary
Disease*

Mary Lynn Wilby, PhD, MPH, MSN, CRNP, ANP-BC, RN

Associate Professor
School of Nursing and Health Sciences
La Salle University
Philadelphia, Pennsylvania

*Chapter 29: Management of Patients with Nonmalignant Hematologic
Disorders*

Contributors to the 14th Edition

Marianne Adam, PhD, RN, CRNP

Schuylkill Haven, Pennsylvania

Chapter 43: *Assessment of Digestive and Gastrointestinal Function*

Julie Adkins, DNP, APN, FNP-BC, FAANP

West Frankfort, Illinois

Chapter 63: *Assessment and Management of Patients with Eye and Vision Disorders*

Jennifer L. Bartlett, PhD, RN-BC, CNE, CHSE

Atlanta, Georgia

Chapter 45: *Management of Patients with Oral and Esophageal Disorders*

Tara Bilofsky, ACNP-BC, MS

Allentown, Pennsylvania

Chapter 21: *Respiratory Care Modalities*

Susan Bonini, MSN, RN

Aurora, Colorado

Chapter 31: *Assessment and Management of Patients with Hypertension*

Lisa Bowman, RN, MSN, CRNP, CNRN

Philadelphia, Pennsylvania

Chapter 67: *Management of Patients with Cerebrovascular Disorders*

Jo Ann Brooks, PhD, RN, FAAN, FCCP

Indianapolis, Indiana

Chapter 23: *Management of Patients with Chest and Lower Respiratory Tract Disorders*

Chapter 24: *Management of Patients with Chronic Pulmonary Disease*

Sherry Burrell, PhD, RN, CNE

Villanova, Pennsylvania

Chapter 46: *Management of Patients with Gastric and Duodenal Disorders*

Wendy Cantrell, DNP, CRNP

Birmingham, Alabama

Chapter 61: *Management of Patients with Dermatologic Disorders*

Lauren Cantwell, RN, MS, ACNP-BC, ACNPC, CNS, CCNS, CCRN, CHFN

Falls Church, Virginia

Chapter 28: *Management of Patients with Structural, Infectious, and Inflammatory Cardiac Disorders*

Kim Cantwell-Gab, MN, ACNP-BC, ANP-BC, CVN, RVT, RDMS

Medford, Oregon

Chapter 30: *Assessment and Management of Patients with Vascular Disorders and Problems of Peripheral Circulation*

Patricia E. Casey, MSN, RN, CPHQ, AAC

Washington, District of Columbia

Chapter 26: *Management of Patients with Dysrhythmias and Conduction Problems*

Jill Cash, RN, MSN, APRN-BC

Franklin, Tennessee

Chapter 38: *Assessment and Management of Patients with Rheumatic Disorders*

Chapter 64: *Assessment and Management of Patients with Hearing and Balance Disorders*

Kerry H. Cheever, PhD, RN

Bethlehem, Pennsylvania

Chapter 1: *Health Care Delivery and Evidence-Based Nursing Practice*

Chapter 47: *Management of Patients with Intestinal and Rectal Disorders*

Chapter 48: *Assessment and Management of Patients with Obesity*

Elise Colancecco, MSN, RN

Bethlehem, Pennsylvania

Chapter 42: *Management of Patients with Musculoskeletal Trauma*

Moya Cook RN, MSN, APN

Marion, Illinois

Chapter 13: *Fluid and Electrolytes: Balance and Disturbance*

Linda Carman Copel, PhD, RN, PMHCNS, BC, CNE, ANEF, NCC, FAPA

Villanova, Pennsylvania

Chapter 4: *Health Education and Health Promotion*

Chapter 6: *Individual and Family Homeostasis, Stress, and Adaptation*

Chapter 59: *Assessment and Management of Problems Related to Male Reproductive Processes*

Elizabeth Petit deMange, PhD, RN

Villanova, Pennsylvania

Chapter 52: *Assessment and Management of Patients with Endocrine Disorders*

Nancy Donegan, MPH, RN

Washington, District of Columbia

Chapter 71: *Management of Patients with Infectious Diseases*

Paulette Dorney, PhD, RN, CCRN

Bethlehem, Pennsylvania

Chapter 21: *Respiratory Care Modalities*

Diane Dressler, MSN, RN, CCRN-R

Milwaukee, Wisconsin

Chapter 27: *Management of Patients with Coronary Vascular Disorders*

Chapter 29: *Management of Patients with Complications from Heart Disease*

Debra Drew, MS, RN-BC (retired), ACNS-BC (retired), AP-PMN

Minneapolis, Minnesota

Chapter 12: *Pain Management*

Phyllis Dubendorf, MSN, RN, CCNS, CNRN, CRNP-BC

Philadelphia, Pennsylvania

Chapter 66: *Management of Patients with Neurologic Dysfunction*

Susan M. Fallone, MS, RN, CNN

Albany, New York

Chapter 53: *Assessment of Kidney and Urinary Function*

Janice Farber, PhD, RN, CNOR

Bethlehem Pennsylvania

Chapter 7: *Overview of Transcultural Nursing*

Eleanor Fitzpatrick, RN, MSN, CCRN, AGCNS-BC, ACNP-BC

Philadelphia, Pennsylvania

Chapter 49: *Assessment and Management of Patients with Hepatic Disorders*

Chapter 50: *Assessment and Management of Patients with Biliary Disorders*

Trudy Gaillard, PhD, RN, CDE

Cincinnati, Ohio

Chapter 51: *Assessment and Management of Patients with Diabetes*

Dawn Goodolf, PhD, RN

Bethlehem, Pennsylvania

Chapter 39: *Assessment of Musculoskeletal Function*

Beth Gotwals, PhD, RN

Bethlehem Pennsylvania

Chapter 2: *Community-Based Nursing Practice*

Home Care Checklists

Theresa Lynn Green, PhD, MSCHRM, BScN, RN

Queensland, Australia

Chapter 10: *Principles and Practices of Rehabilitation*

Debbie Gunter, MSN, APRN, ACHPN

Atlanta, Georgia

Chapter 22: *Management of Patients with Upper Respiratory Tract Disorders*

Jamie Heffernan, MSN, RN, CCRN-K, NE-BC

New York, New York

Chapter 62: *Management of Patients with Burn Injury*

Janice L. Hinkle, PhD, RN, CNRN

Villanova, Pennsylvania

Chapter 55: Management of Patients with Urinary Disorders

Lisa J. Jesaitis, RN, MS, CHFN, ACNP

Washington, District of Columbia

Chapter 28: Management of Patients with Structural, Infectious, and Inflammatory Cardiac Disorders

Tamara Kear, PhD, RN, CNS, CNN

Villanova, Pennsylvania

Chapter 54: Management of Patients with Kidney Disorders

Elizabeth Keech, RN, PhD

Villanova, Pennsylvania

Chapter 11: Health Care of the Older Adult

Kathleen Kelleher, DMH, WHNP-BC, CBCN, DVS

Pompton Plains, New Jersey

Chapter 58: Assessment and Management of Patients with Breast Disorders

Lynne Kennedy, PhD, MSN, RN, RNFA, CHPN, CNOR, CLNC, CHTP, Alumnus CCRN

Fairfax, Virginia

Chapter 17: Preoperative Nursing Management

Chapter 18: Intraoperative Nursing

Chapter 19: Postoperative Nursing Management

Mary Beth Flynn Makic, PhD, CNS, CCNS, CCRN-K, FAAN, FNAP

Professor

Denver, Colorado

Chapter 14: Shock and Multiple Organ Dysfunction Syndrome

Katrina Nice Masterson, RN, DNP, FNP-BC, DCNP

West Lafayette, Indiana

Chapter 60: Assessment of Integumentary Function

Jennifer McCaughey, MSN, BS, RNC-MNN, CCE

Fairfax, Virginia

Chapter 57: Management of Patients with Female Reproductive Disorders

Melissa V. Moreda, BSN, RN, CCRN, CNRN, SCRN

Raleigh, North Carolina

Chapter 70: Management of Patients with Oncologic or Degenerative Neurologic Disorders

Donna Naydich, MSN, RN, ACNP, TCRN

Ocala, Florida

Chapter 72: Emergency Nursing

Chapter 73: Terrorism, Mass Casualty, and Disaster Nursing

Kathleen Nokes, PhD, RN, FAAN

New York, New York

Chapter 36: Management of Patients with Immunodeficiency Disorders

Kristen J. Overbaugh, PhD, RN, ACNS-BC, CHPN

San Antonio, Texas

Chapter 20: Assessment of Respiratory Function

Janet Parkosewich, DNSc, RN, FAHA

New Haven, Connecticut

Chapter 25: Assessment of Cardiovascular Function

Mae Ann Pasquale, PhD, RN

Allentown, Pennsylvania

Chapter 40: Musculoskeletal Care Modalities

Beth A. Bednarz Pruski, RN, MSN, CCRN

Washington, District of Columbia

Chapter 26: Management of Patients with Dysrhythmias and Conduction Problems

Sue Pugh, MSN, RN, CNRN, CRRN, CNS-BC, FAHA

Baltimore, Maryland

Chapter 69: Management of Patients with Neurologic Infections, Autoimmune Disorders, and Neuropathies

JoAnne Reifsnyder, PhD, RN, FAAN

Kennett Square, Pennsylvania

Chapter 16: End-of-Life Care

Rebecca Wildman Repetti, RN, ANP-BC

New York, New York

Chapter 35: Assessment of Immune Function

Marylou V. Robinson, PhD, FNP

Tacoma, Washington

Chapter 41: Management of Patients with Musculoskeletal Disorders

Erin Sarsfield, MSN, RN, CCRN-K

Hershey, Pennsylvania

Chapter 44: Digestive and Gastrointestinal Treatment Modalities

Susan Scholtz, PhD, RN

Bethlehem, Pennsylvania

Chapter 3: Critical Thinking, Ethical Decision Making, and the Nursing Process Ethical Dilemma charts

Lindsey R. Siewert, RN, MSN, APRN, CCNS, CCRN-K

Louisville, Kentucky

Chapter 65: Assessment of Neurologic Function

Suzanne C. Smeltzer, RN, EdD, ANEF, FAAN

Villanova, Pennsylvania

Chapter 9: Chronic Illness and Disability

Jennifer Specht, PhD, RN

Chester, Pennsylvania

Chapter 5: Adult Health and Nutritional Assessment

Chapter 48: Assessment and Management of Patients with Obesity

Cindy Stern, RN, MSN, CCRP

Philadelphia, Pennsylvania

Chapter 15: Management of Patients with Oncologic Disorders

Julie G. Stover, RN, MSN, CRNP

Lancaster, Pennsylvania

Chapter 56: Assessment and Management of Female Physiologic Processes

Kimberly A. Subasic, PhD, MS, RN

Scranton, Pennsylvania

Chapter 8: Overview of Genetics and Genomics in Nursing

Genetics in Nursing Practice charts

Carole Sullivan, DNP, RN

Eldorado, Illinois

Chapter 37: Assessment and Management of Patients with Allergic Disorders

Unit-opening case studies, Units 1–9

Mary Laudon Thomas, MS, CNS, AOCN

Palo Alto, California

Chapter 32: Assessment of Hematologic Function and Treatment Modalities

Chapter 33: Management of Patients with Nonmalignant Hematologic Disorders

Chapter 34: Management of Patients with Hematologic Neoplasms

Kristin Weitmann, RN, MSN, ACNP

Wauwatosa, Wisconsin

Chapter 27: Management of Patients with Coronary Vascular Disorders

Chapter 29: Management of Patients with Complications from Heart Disease

Marie Wilson, RN, MSN, CCRN, CNRN, CRNP

Philadelphia, Pennsylvania

Chapter 68: Management of Patients with Neurologic Trauma

Reviewers

Julie Baldwin, DNP

Associate Professor
Missouri Western State University
St. Joseph, Missouri

Tamara Baxter, MSN, RN, CNE

Assistant Professor
Northwestern State University
Natchitoches, Louisiana

Rachel Coats, MS, RN, CEN, CNE

Lecturer
Lander University
Greenwood, South Carolina

Debra Connell-Dent, MSN, RN

Assistant Teaching Professor
University of Missouri St. Louis
St. Louis, Missouri

Sarah Darrell, MSN, RN, CNOR

Faculty
Ivy Tech Community College Valparaiso
Valparaiso, Indiana

Amanda Finley, MSN, RN

Assistant Teaching Professor
University of Missouri St. Louis
St. Louis, Missouri

Cassie Flock, MSN, RN

Assistant Professor
Vincennes University
Jasper, Indiana

Belinda Fuller, RN, MSN

Nurse Educator
Gadsden State Community College
Gadsden, Alabama

Melissa Gorton, MS, RN

Assistant Professor of Nursing
Castleton University
Castleton, Vermont

Lori Hailey, RN, MSN, CHSE

Assistant Professor
Arkansas State University
Jonesboro, Arkansas

Carol Heim, MA, RN

Associate Professor
Mount Mercy University
Cedar Rapids, Iowa

Melissa Humfleet, DNP, RN

Assistant Professor of Nursing
Lincoln Memorial University
Harrogate, Tennessee

Elizabeth D. Katrancha, DNP, CCNS, RN, CNE

Assistant Professor
University of Pittsburgh at Johnstown
Johnstown, Pennsylvania

Lynne C. Kiernan, DNP, MSN, RN-BC

Assistant Professor
Norwich University
Northfield, Vermont

Tammy Killen, MSN, RN

Instructor
Jacksonville State University
Jacksonville, Alabama

Tina Marie Kline, MSN, RN, CMSRN, CNE

Associate Professor
Pennsylvania College of Technology
Williamsport, Pennsylvania

Angie Koller, DNP, MSN, RN

Dean and Professor
Ivy Tech Community College
Indianapolis, Indiana

Trudy Kuehn, RN, BSN, MSN

Associate Professor of Nursing
Paul D. Camp Community College
Franklin, Virginia

Dana Law-Ham, PhD, RN, FNP-BC, CNE

Assistant Clinical Professor
University of New England
Portland, Maine

Phyllis Magaletto, MS, RN, BC

Nursing Instructor
Cochran School of Nursing
Yonkers, New York

Julie Page, EdD, MSN, RN

Assistant Professor
University of North Carolina at Chapel Hill
Chapel Hill, North Carolina

Judith Pahlck, MSN-Ed, RN

Dean of Nursing
Jersey College
Teterboro, New Jersey

Annette M. Peacock-Johnson, DNP, RN

Associate Professor of Nursing
Saint Mary's College
Notre Dame, Indiana

Amanda Pribble, MSN, FNP-C

Assistant Professor of Nursing
University of Lynchburg
Lynchburg, Virginia

Karen Robertson, MSN, MBA, PhD/ABD

Associate Professor
Rock Valley College
Rockford, Illinois

Nancy Ross, PhD, RN

Assistant Clinical Professor
University of New England
Portland, Maine

Susan Self, DNP, RN

Assistant Professor in Nursing
Arkansas Tech University
Russellville, Arkansas

Leah Shreves, MSN, RN

Associate Professor of Nursing
Edison State Community College
Piqua, Ohio

Janice A. Sinoski, MSN/Ed, BSN, CCRN, CEN

Assistant Professor of Nursing
University of Lynchburg
Lynchburg, Virginia

Mendy Stanford, DNP, MSN/Ed, CNE

Executive Director of Nursing and Allied Health
Treasure Valley Community College
Ontario, Oregon

Charles Tucker, DNP, RN, CNE

Associate Professor
Mars Hill University
Mars Hill, North Carolina

Heather Vitko, PhD, RN, CCRN, TCRN, CNL

Assistant Professor of Nursing
Saint Francis University
Windber, Pennsylvania

Mina Wayman, APRN, MSN

Associate Professor
Utah Valley University
Orem, Utah

Heather Wierzbinski-Cross, MSN, RN, CNE

Dean for the School of Nursing
Ivy Tech Community College Richmond
Richmond, Indiana

Kennetta Wiggins, MSN, RN

Nursing Instructor and Registered Nurse
Northwest Arkansas Community College
Bentonville, Arkansas

Renee Wright, EdD, RN

Associate Professor
York College, City University of New York
Jamaica, New York

Preface

Since 1964, when Lillian Sholtis Brunner and Doris Smith Suddarth introduced the first edition of the *Textbook of Medical-Surgical Nursing*, the practice of nursing has flexed, changed, evolved, and advanced to meet changing health needs and expectations for health care. With each subsequent edition of this textbook, Lillian and Doris, and their successors, Suzanne Smeltzer and Brenda Bare (and eventually we, the current authors), admirably updated and revised content to reflect changes and challenges that shaped the practice of nursing, considering complex and interconnected influences and maintaining a focus upon salient social, cultural, economic, and environmental factors. Never have we, nor our distinguished and capable predecessors, had to revise and update seminal medical-surgical nursing concepts, principles, and practices during a global pandemic—until now. Most assuredly, this has been a daunting task. Yet, compared to what many of our phenomenally creative, determined, and resilient professional colleagues have had to confront and contend with as a result of this pandemic, our work was much less onerous. We would also like to recognize the long overdue and growing awareness of structural racism within healthcare and the impact of systemic racism on perpetuating stereotypes and health disparities. We encourage nurse educators and students to thoughtfully consider and discuss these issues when exploring epidemiological factors of specific disorders and nursing care throughout the textbook. Now that we have sent this edition to print and have time to reflect upon our work, we find ourselves humbled to call ourselves your peers and so proud of the important and sacred work that you do today and every day. We have decided to break with a long tradition in this textbook that tends to not provide dedications. To YOU our fellow nurses, nursing faculty, and nursing students, we dedicate this book.

Organization

Brunner & Suddarth's Textbook of Medical-Surgical Nursing, 15th Edition, is organized into 16 units. These units mirror those found in previous editions with the incorporation of some changes. Content was updated throughout all units, with cross-references to specific chapters included as appropriate. Units 1 through 3 cover foundational principles and core concepts related to medical-surgical nursing practice. Units 4 through 15 discuss adult health conditions that are treated medically or surgically. Unit 16 describes community-based challenges that affect medical-surgical nursing practice.

Units 4 through 15 are structured in the following way to better facilitate comprehension:

- The first chapter in the unit covers assessment and includes a review of normal anatomy and physiology of the body system being discussed.
- Subsequent chapters in the unit cover management of specific disorders. Pathophysiology, clinical manifestations, assessment and diagnostic findings, medical

management, and nursing management are presented. Nursing Process sections, provided for select conditions, clarify and expand on the nurse's role in caring for patients with these conditions.

There are fewer chapters in this edition than in the past several editions; however, the seminal content within the deleted chapters remains, and is updated and revised. Notably, core content in previous-edition chapters that focused exclusively on *therapeutic modalities* has now been incorporated into chapters focused on health conditions and disorders, where its application dovetails seamlessly into nursing management and the nursing process. Thus, the application of these modalities to medical-surgical nursing practice is readily apparent.

Special Features

When caring for patients, nurses assume many different roles, including practitioner, educator, advocate, and researcher. Many of the features in this textbook have been developed to help nurses fulfill these varied responsibilities. Key updates to practice-oriented features in the 15th edition include new unit-opening Case Studies with QSEN Competency Focus—a feature that highlights a competency from the Quality and Safety Education for Nurses (QSEN) Institute that is applicable to the case study and poses questions for students to consider about relevant knowledge, skills, and attitudes (KSAs). Quality and Safety Nursing Alerts, Genetics in Nursing Practice charts, Ethical Dilemma charts, and Home Care Checklist charts offer updated information.

Plans of Nursing Care, provided for select disorders, illustrate how the nursing process is applied to meet the patient's health care and nursing needs. New to the 15th edition, nursing diagnoses used in the Plans of Nursing Care and throughout the textbook are those devised and validated by the International Council of Nurses in the *International Classification for Nursing Practice (ICNP) Catalogue*. (Please note that because of the global foci of these nursing diagnoses, select terms in these diagnoses are spelled in the British manner.)

A new addition to the textbook this cycle is a chapter focused exclusively on the unique health care needs of persons who identify as lesbian, gay, bisexual, transgender, and/or queer (LGBTQ). As is the case with other chapters of this textbook, the roles of the professional nurse as a practitioner, educator, advocate, and researcher when providing care for persons who are LGBTQ provide the framework for this new chapter.

In addition, two new features in this edition highlight content related to COVID-19 and care of veterans. *COVID-19 Considerations* sections identify evidence-based information at the time this material was written related to the severe acute respiratory syndrome coronavirus 2 (SARS-CoV-2) or the nursing care of patients with coronavirus disease 2019 (COVID-19). *Veterans Considerations* sections include information applicable to the special care needs of military

veterans. Veterans—who may include persons from all age groups, genders, races, and socioeconomic strata—may have unique health risks based upon dates of service and assignment locale.

The textbook also provides pedagogical features developed to help readers engage and learn critical content. Concept Mastery Alerts continue to clarify fundamental nursing concepts to improve the reader's understanding of potentially confusing topics, as identified by Misconception Alerts in Lippincott's Adaptive Learning Powered by PrepU. An enhanced suite of online, interactive multimedia resources is also highlighted with icons placed in text near relevant topics. Unfolding Patient Stories (case study vignettes) based on vSim for Nursing patients are part of this suite of resources.

Read the User's Guide that follows the Preface for a full explanation and visual representation of all special features. See also the "Special Charts in This Book" and "Case Studies in This Book" sections of this front matter for the location of these items in the text.

A Comprehensive Package for Teaching and Learning

To further facilitate teaching and learning, a carefully designed ancillary package has been developed to assist faculty and students.

Instructor Resources




Tools to assist you with teaching your course are available upon adoption of this text on **thePoint** at <http://thepoint.lww.com/Brunner15e>.

- An **e-Book** on **thePoint** gives you access to the book's full text and images online.
- A thoroughly revised and augmented **Test Generator** contains more than 2900 NCLEX-style questions mapped to chapter learning outcomes.
- An extensive collection of materials is provided for each book chapter:
 - **Lesson Plans** outline learning outcomes and identify relevant resources from the robust instructor and student resource packages to help you prepare for your class.
 - **Pre-Lecture Quizzes** (and answers) allow you to check students' reading.
 - **PowerPoint Presentations** provide an easy way to integrate the textbook with your students' classroom experience; multiple-choice and true/false questions are included to promote class participation.
 - **Guided Lecture Notes** are organized by outcome and provide corresponding PowerPoint slide numbers to simplify preparation for lecture.
 - **Discussion Topics** (and suggested answers) can be used in the classroom or in online discussion boards to facilitate interaction with your students.
 - **Assignments** (and suggested answers) include group, written, clinical, and Web assignments to engage students in varied activities and assess their learning.
 - **Case Studies** with related questions (and suggested answers) give students an opportunity to apply their knowledge to a client case similar to one they might encounter in practice.
- **Sample Syllabi** are provided for one- and two-semester courses.

- A **QSEN Competency Map** identifies content and special features in the book related to competencies identified by the QSEN Institute.
- An **Image Bank** lets you use the photographs and illustrations from this textbook in your course materials.
- Access to all **Student Resources** is provided so that you can understand the student experience and use these resources in your course as well.

Student Resources

An exciting set of free learning resources is available on **thePoint** to help students review and apply vital concepts in medical-surgical nursing. Multimedia engines have been optimized so that students can access many of these resources on mobile devices. Students can access all these resources at <http://thepoint.lww.com/Brunner15e> using the codes printed in the front of their textbooks.

- **NCLEX-Style Review Questions** for each chapter, totaling more than 1800 questions, help students review important concepts and practice for NCLEX.
- Interactive learning resources appeal to a variety of learning styles. Icons in the text direct readers to relevant resources:
 -  **Concepts in Action Animations** bring physiologic and pathophysiologic concepts to life.
 -  **Practice & Learn Case Studies** present case scenarios and offer interactive exercises and questions to help students apply what they have learned.
 -  **Watch & Learn Video Clips** reinforce skills from the textbook and appeal to visual and auditory learners.
- **Procedural Guidelines charts** review key nursing interventions and rationales for specific patient care situations.
- **Appendix A, Diagnostic Studies and Interpretation**, provides reference ranges and lab values for common laboratory tests.
- **Journal Articles** offer access to current articles relevant to each chapter and available in Wolters Kluwer journals to familiarize students with nursing literature.

Study Guide

A comprehensive study aid for reviewing key concepts, **Study Guide for Brunner & Suddarth's Textbook of Medical-Surgical Nursing, 15th Edition**, has been thoroughly revised and presents a variety of exercises, including case studies and practice NCLEX-style questions, to reinforce textbook content and enhance learning.

vSim for Nursing

Available for separate purchase, vSim for Nursing, jointly developed by Laerdal Medical and Wolters Kluwer, offers innovative scenario-based learning modules consisting of Web-based virtual simulations, course learning materials, and curriculum tools designed to develop critical thinking skills and promote clinical confidence and competence. vSim for Nursing | Medical-Surgical includes 10 virtual simulations based on the National League for Nursing Volume I Complex patient scenarios. Students can progress through suggested readings, pre- and postsimulation assessments, documentation

assignments, and guided reflection questions, and will receive an individualized feedback log immediately upon completion of the simulation. Throughout the student learning experience, the product offers remediation back to trusted Lippincott resources, including *Brunner & Suddarth's Textbook of Medical-Surgical Nursing*, as well as Lippincott Nursing Advisor and Lippincott Nursing Procedures—two online, evidence-based, clinical information solutions used in health care facilities throughout the United States. This innovative product provides a comprehensive patient-focused solution for learning and integrating simulation into the classroom.

Contact your Wolters Kluwer sales representative or visit <http://thepoint.lww.com/vsim> for options to enhance your medical-surgical nursing course with vSim for Nursing.

Lippincott DocuCare

Available for separate purchase, Lippincott DocuCare combines Web-based academic EHR simulation software with clinical case scenarios, allowing students to learn how to use an EHR in a safe, true-to-life setting, while enabling instructors to measure their progress. Lippincott DocuCare's nonlinear solution works well in the classroom, simulation lab, and clinical practice.

Contact your Wolters Kluwer sales representative or visit <http://thepoint.lww.com/DocuCare> for options to enhance your medical-surgical nursing course with DocuCare.

A Comprehensive, Digital, Integrated Course Solution

Lippincott® CoursePoint+ is an integrated, digital curriculum solution for nursing education that provides a completely interactive experience geared to help students understand, retain, and apply their course knowledge and be prepared for practice. The time-tested, easy-to-use, and trusted solution includes engaging learning tools, evidence-based practice, case studies, and in-depth reporting to meet students where they are in their learning, combined with the most trusted nursing education content on the market to help prepare students for practice. This easy-to-use digital learning solution

of *Lippincott® CoursePoint+*, combined with unmatched support, gives instructors and students everything they need for course and curriculum success!

Lippincott® CoursePoint+ includes:

- Leading content provides a variety of learning tools to engage students of all learning styles.
- A personalized learning approach gives students the content and tools they need at the moment they need it, giving them data for more focused remediation and helping to boost their confidence and competence.
- Powerful tools, including varying levels of case studies, interactive learning activities, and adaptive learning powered by PrepU, help students learn the critical thinking and clinical judgment skills to help them become practice-ready nurses.
- Preparation for Practice tools improve student competence, confidence, and success in transitioning to practice.
 - vSim for Nursing: Co-developed by Laerdal Medical and Wolters Kluwer, vSim for Nursing simulates real nursing scenarios and allows students to interact with virtual patients in a safe, online environment.
 - Lippincott Advisor for Education: With over 8500 entries covering the latest evidence-based content and drug information, Lippincott Advisor for Education provides students with the most up-to-date information possible, while giving them valuable experience with the same point-of-care content they will encounter in practice.
- Unparalleled reporting provides in-depth dashboards with several data points to track student progress and help identify strengths and weaknesses.
- Unmatched support includes training coaches, product trainers, and nursing education consultants to help educators and students implement CoursePoint+ with ease.

Janice L. Hinkle, PhD, RN, CNRN

Kerry H. Cheever, PhD, RN

Kristen J. Overbaugh, PhD, RN, ACNS-BC, CHPN

User's Guide

Brunner & Suddarth's Textbook of Medical-Surgical Nursing, 15th Edition, has been revised and updated to reflect the complex nature of nursing practice today. This textbook includes many features to help you gain and apply the knowledge that you need to pass NCLEX and successfully meet the challenges and opportunities of clinical practice. In addition, features have been developed specifically to help you fulfill the varied roles that nurses assume in practice.

Opening Features That Start with the End in Mind


Unit-opening features put the patient first and highlight competent nursing as well as application of the nursing process.

- **All new! A Case Study with QSEN Competency Focus** opens each unit and provides discussion points focusing on one competency from the QSEN Institute: patient-centered care, interdisciplinary teamwork and collaboration, evidence-based practice, quality improvement, safety, or informatics. This feature helps you consider the KSAs required for the delivery of safe, quality patient care. For your convenience, a list of these case studies, along with their location in the book, appears in the “Case Studies in This Book” section later in this front matter.

UNIT 5

Cardiovascular and Circulatory Function

Case Study USING TECHNOLOGY TO PREVENT MEDICATION ERRORS



An 85-year-old male presents to the emergency department with complaints of substernal chest pressure rated 9 on a 0–10 pain scale with pain radiating to his left arm. Other signs and symptoms include nausea, dizziness, shortness of breath (SOB), diaphoresis, and a feeling of “something bad is happening to me.”

He is emergently sent for cardiac catheterization; a 90% distal and 85% proximal stenosis of the right coronary artery was detected. He subsequently underwent a percutaneous coronary intervention with balloon angioplasty and placement of stents. Once recovered from anesthesia he is admitted to the cardiac step-down unit where you work. When receiving report you notice in the electronic health record (EHR) that the patient should have received the first dose of two medications in the cardiac catheterization lab following the procedure. However, these medications were not administered as prescribed and you notify the interventional cardiologist about this error.

QSEN Competency Focus: Informatics

The complexities inherent in today's health care system challenge nurses to demonstrate integration of specific interdisciplinary core competencies. These competencies are aimed at ensuring the delivery of safe, quality patient care (Institute of Medicine, 2003). The Quality and Safety Education for Nurses project (Cronenwett, Sherwood, Barnsteiner, et al., 2007; QSEN, 2020) provides a framework for the knowledge, skills, and attitudes (KSAs) required for nurses to demonstrate competency in these key areas, which include *patient-centered care, interdisciplinary teamwork and collaboration, evidence-based practice, quality improvement, safety, and informatics*.

Informatics Definition: Use information and technology to communicate, manage knowledge, mitigate error, and support decision-making.

SELECT PRE-LICENSURE KSAs	APPLICATION AND REFLECTION
Knowledge	
Explain why information and technology skills are essential for safe patient care	Describe how the use of the EHR and other technology can relay information to the nurse to prevent medication errors.
Skills	
Apply technology and information management tools to support safe processes of care	Describe the type of training needed to navigate the EHR efficiently. Identify how you can utilize technology to ensure effective communication, manage medication administration, and prevent errors.
Attitudes	
Value technologies that support clinical decision-making, error prevention, and care coordination	Reflect on how you value technologies that support clinical decision-making, error prevention, and care coordination. Do these values have the potential to create barriers to effective use of technology to prevent errors in your workplace?

Cronenwett, L., Sherwood, G., Barnsteiner, J., et al. (2007). Quality and safety education for nurses. *Nursing Outlook*, 55(3), 122–131; Institute of Medicine. (2003). *Health professions education: A bridge to quality*. Washington, DC: National Academies Press; QSEN Institute. (2020). QSEN competencies: Definitions and pre-licensure KSAs: Informatics. Retrieved on 8/15/2020 at: qsen.org/competencies/pre-licensure-ksas/informatics

- **Learning Outcomes**, succinctly focused and condensed in this edition, provide an overview of each chapter and identify what you will be able to do after completing the material, to help focus reading and studying.
- **NEW! Nursing Concepts** listed at the beginning of each chapter make clear how content applies to Concepts-based curricula.
- A **Glossary** provides a list of key terms and definitions at the beginning of each chapter, providing a review of vocabulary words before reading the material and a useful reference and study tool.

54 Assessment and Management of Patients Who Are LGBTQ

LEARNING OUTCOMES

On completion of this chapter, the learner will be able to:

1. Describe the importance of providing inclusive health-care environments for people who are lesbian, gay, bisexual, transgender, and queer.
2. Use inclusive terminology when communicating and conducting an assessment with a person who is lesbian, gay, bisexual, transgender, and queer.
3. Explain and demonstrate the proper techniques to perform a health history and physical assessment and discriminate between normal and abnormal findings identified in the patient who is lesbian, gay, bisexual, transgender, and queer.
4. Describe the various medical procedures and hormone treatments available for the person who is undergoing gender reassignment.
5. Compare and contrast surgical procedures available to people seeking gender reassignment in terms of indications and preoperative and postoperative complications.
6. Use the nursing process as a framework for care of the patient who undergoes gender reassignment surgery.

NURSING CONCEPTS

Assessment	Family	Sexuality
Communication	Identity	
Development/Human Development	Professionalism/Professional Behaviors	

GLOSSARY

bisexual: people who are romantically, emotionally, or sexually attracted to both male and female genders

cisgender: people who identify with the gender that matches the sex assigned to them at birth

gay: people who are romantically, emotionally, or sexually attracted to the same gender, such as men attracted to men

gender: set of socially constructed norms and behaviors that are taught to women and men

gender dysphoria: distress a person feels due to a mismatch between their gender identity and sex assigned at birth

questioning: a person who is unsure or is still exploring their sexual orientation or is concerned about applying a social label to themselves

sex: refers to the physical or biological characteristics that distinguish women and men, such as chromosomes, genitals, and hormones

sexual orientation: umbrella term that refers to romantic, emotional, or sexual attraction to persons of the opposite gender, the same gender, or to both or more than one gender

third-person pronouns: a way of referencing a person

Features to Develop the Nurse as Practitioner

One of the central roles of the nurse is to provide holistic care to patients and their families, both independently and through collaboration with other health care professionals. Special features throughout chapters are designed to assist readers with clinical practice.

- **Nursing Process sections** are organized according to the nursing process framework—the basis for all nursing practice—and help clarify the nurse’s responsibilities in caring for patients with select disorders.


NURSING PROCESS

The Patient with an Arrhythmia

Assessment

Major areas of assessment include possible causes of the arrhythmia, contributing factors, and the arrhythmia’s effect on the heart’s ability to pump an adequate blood volume. When cardiac output is reduced, the amount of oxygen reaching the tissues and vital organs is diminished. This diminished oxygenation produces the signs and symptoms associated with arrhythmias. If these signs and symptoms are severe or if they occur frequently, the patient may experience significant distress and disruption of daily life.


- **Plans of Nursing Care**, provided for select disorders, illustrate how the nursing process is applied to meet the patient's health care and nursing needs.

Chart 45-4  **PLAN OF NURSING CARE**
Care of the Patient with Hypothyroidism

NURSING DIAGNOSIS: Impaired breathing associated with depressed ventilation
GOAL: Improved respiratory status and maintenance of normal breathing pattern

Nursing Interventions	Rationale	Expected Outcomes
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Assess respiratory rate, depth, pattern, pulse oximetry, and arterial blood gases. 2. Encourage deep breathing, coughing, and the use of incentive spirometry. 3. Verify with the provider orders to administer any hypnotic and sedative until euthyroid state achieved. If these medications are needed, monitor for adverse side effects. 4. Maintain patient airway through suction and ventilator support if needed (see Chapter 19 for care of patients requiring mechanical ventilation). 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Identifies patient's baseline to monitor further changes and evaluate effectiveness of interventions. 2. Prevents atelectasis and promotes adequate ventilation. 3. Patients with hypothyroidism are susceptible to respiratory depression with the use of hypnotics and sedatives. 4. The use of artificial airway and ventilator support may be necessary. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Shows improved respiratory status and normal respiratory rate, depth, and pattern • Takes deep breaths, coughs and uses incentive spirometry • Explains rationale for cautious use of medications • Maintains adequate oxygenation

- **Assessment charts** focus on data that should be collected as part of the assessment step of the nursing process.
- **Risk Factors charts** outline factors that can impair health and should be considered in the context of social determinants of health and systemic racism.

Chart 35-3  **ASSESSMENT**
Assessing for Peripheral Nerve Function

Assessment of peripheral nerve function has two key elements: evaluation of sensation and evaluation of motion. The nurse may perform one or all of the following during a musculoskeletal assessment.

Nerve	Test of Sensation	Test of Movement
Peroneal	Prick the skin midway between the great and second toe.	Ask the patient to dorsiflex the foot and extend the toes.







Chart 49-1  **RISK FACTORS**
Urinary Tract Infection

- Contributing conditions such as:
 - Female gender
 - Diabetes
 - Pregnancy
 - Neurologic disorders
 - Gout
 - Altered states caused by incomplete emptying of the bladder and urinary stasis
- Decreased natural host defenses or immunosuppression
- Inability or failure to empty the bladder completely
- Inflammation or abrasion of the urethral mucosa
- Instrumentation of the urinary tract (e.g., catheterization, cystoscopic procedures)
- Obstructed urinary flow caused by:
 - Congenital abnormalities
 - Urethral strictures
 - Contracture of the bladder neck
 - Bladder tumors
 - Calculi (stones) in the ureters or kidneys
 - Compression of the ureters

- **Genetics in Nursing Practice charts** summarize and highlight nursing assessments and management issues related to the role of genetics in select disorders.

Chart 8-1
GENETICS IN NURSING PRACTICE

Genetics Concepts and the Older Adult

Genetic conditions in the older adult may occur from a specific gene mutation or arise as a result of a genetic predisposition combined with other factors (multifactorial). The following are examples of some adult-onset genetic conditions:

- Colon cancer
- Hemochromatosis
- Huntington disease
- Polycystic kidney disease
- Alzheimer's disease

The following are some examples of diseases with multifactorial components, which may include a genetic predisposition, in the older adult:

- Diabetes
- Emphysema
- Heart disease

Nursing Assessments

Refer to Chapter 4, Chart 4-2: Genetics in Nursing Practice: Genetic Aspects of Health Assessment

Family History Assessment Specific to the Older Adult

- Collect and assess family history on both maternal and paternal sides of the family for three generations.
- Determine whether genetic testing has occurred with other family members.
- Assess for individual and family perceptions and beliefs around topics related to genetics.

Patient Assessment Specific to the Older Adult and Genetic Illness

- Assess older adult patient's knowledge and understanding of genetics, genetic testing, and gene-based therapies.

- Assess the patient's understanding of genetic information and decipher health literacy needs.
- Perform cultural, social, and spiritual assessment.
- Assess patient's communication capacities so that communication strategies about genetics are tailored to their needs and abilities.
- Identify patient's support system.

Management Issues Specific to Genetics and the Older Adult

- Refer for further genetic counseling and evaluation as warranted so that family members can discuss inheritance, risk to other family members, and availability of genetic testing and gene-based interventions.
- Offer appropriate genetic information and resources that take into consideration older patient's literacy needs.
- Evaluate older patient's understanding before, during, and after the introduction of genetic information and services.
- Take the time to clearly explain the concepts of genetic testing to older patients and provide written information that reinforces the topic of discussion.
- Participate in the management and coordination of care of older patients with genetic conditions and individuals predisposed to develop or pass on a genetic condition.

Genetics Resources

See Chapter 6, Chart 6-7: Components of Genetic Counseling for additional resources.

- **Pharmacology charts and tables** display important considerations related to administering medications and monitoring drug therapy.

Medication	Adverse Effects	Nursing Considerations ^a
TABLE 42-2 Medications Prescribed to Treat Obesity		
Gastrointestinal Lipase Inhibitor		
Mechanism of Action: Diminishes intestinal absorption and metabolism of fats, particularly triglycerides		
Orlistat	Diarrhea Flatus Oily stools Fecal incontinence	Patients may have associated problems with malabsorption of nutrients; advise them to take a concomitant daily multivitamin. Caution in patients with known history of renal insufficiency, liver disease, or gallbladder disease as concomitant use is associated with renal calculi, liver failure, and cholelithiasis. Do not administer with cyclosporine.
<i>Note: Also available in lower dosages over-the-counter</i>		
Selective Serotonin Receptor Agonist		
Mechanism of Action: Stimulates serotonin 5-HT _{2C} receptors, causing excretion of the alpha-melanocortin-stimulating hormone (alpha-MSH) and elicits appetite suppression		
Lorcaserin	Fatigue Dizziness Nausea Headaches Cough Dry mouth Constipation	Encourage patient to stay well hydrated. Can be associated with deficits in attention or memory; administer with caution in patients who drive or work with hazardous equipment when first prescribed until effects are realized. Can cause hypoglycemia in patients with diabetes. Contraindicated for patients taking antidepressants or migraine medications due to synergistic effects. Discontinue in patients who express suicidal ideation. Rarely, serotonin syndrome may develop—be alert for high fevers, brisk reflexes, agitation, and diarrhea; notify primary provider immediately and hold medication if these occur.

- **Updated! Quality and Safety Nursing Alerts** offer tips for best clinical practice and red-flag safety warnings to help avoid common mistakes.

Quality and Safety Nursing Alert


Any signed form required for surgery is placed in a prominent place on the patient's medical record and accompanies the patient to the OR.

- **NEW! Veterans Considerations sections** highlight information applicable to the special care needs of veterans of the military. Veterans—who may include persons from all age groups, genders, races, and socioeconomic strata—may have unique health risks, based upon dates of service and assignment locale.

Veterans Considerations

Many American veterans who served in Iraq and Afghanistan are experiencing respiratory disorders as a result of exposure to pollutants in situations such as sand storms and car bombings. Their illnesses can range from a new onset of asthma to constrictive bronchiolitis (Harrington, Schmidt, Szema, et al., 2017). These veterans could also have been exposed to organic contamination within the sand that could further irritate airways. When providing care to a veteran, it is important to assess exposure to airway irritants, particularly when the patient is complaining of chronic respiratory symptoms.

- **Obesity Considerations icons** identify content related to obesity or to the nursing care of patients with obesity.

 Obesity contributes to back strain by overtaxing the relatively weak back muscles in the absence of abdominal muscle support. Exercises are less effective and more difficult to perform when the patient is overweight. Weight reduction through diet modification is important to minimize recurrence of back pain. A sound nutritional plan that includes a change in eating habits and low-impact activities is vital. Noting achievement of weight reduction and providing positive reinforcement facilitate adherence. Back

- **NEW! COVID-19 Considerations sections** identify evidence-based information at the time this material was written related to the severe acute respiratory syndrome coronavirus 2 (SARS-CoV-2) or the nursing care of patients with coronavirus disease 2019 (COVID-19).



COVID-19 Considerations

The coronavirus disease 2019 (COVID-19) pandemic began in Wuhan, China, in late 2019. Since that time, several risks for both severe acute respiratory syndrome coronavirus 2 (SARS-CoV-2) infection and pathogenesis to coronavirus disease (COVID-19) have been posed. Epidemiologic findings from early data in China suggest that having a history of hypertension could be an important risk factor for becoming infected with SARS-CoV-2 as well as for being hospitalized to manage COVID-19 (Guo, Huang, Lin, et al., 2020;

- **Critical Care icons** identify nursing considerations for the patient who is critically ill.



Pulmonary Edema

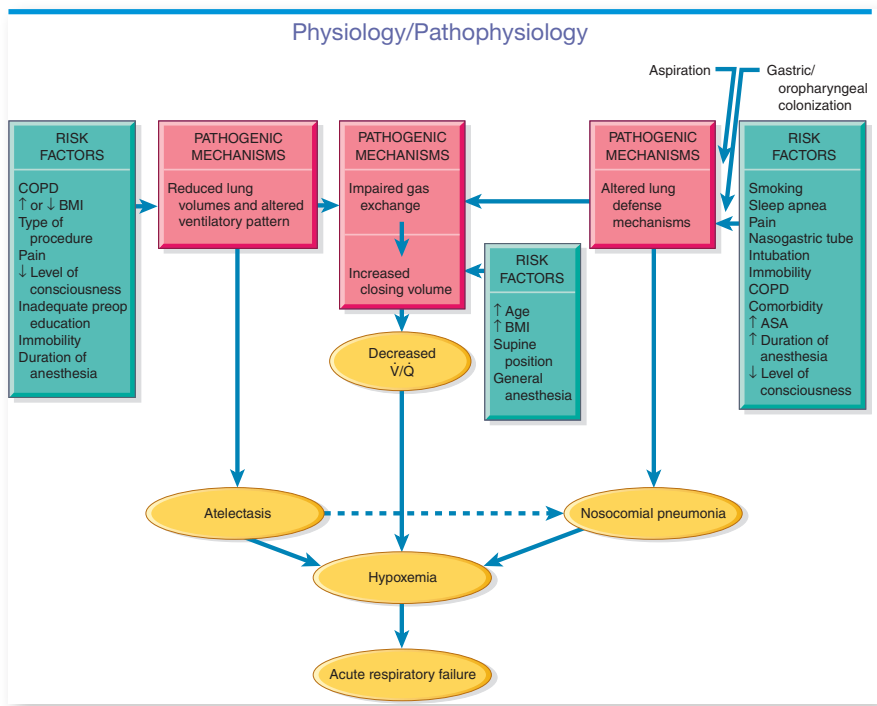
Pulmonary edema is an acute event, reflecting a breakdown of physiologic compensatory mechanisms; hence, it is sometimes referred to as acute decompensated heart failure. It can occur following acute MI or as an exacerbation of chronic HF. When the left ventricle begins to fail, blood backs up into the pulmonary circulation, causing pulmonary interstitial edema. This may occur quickly in some patients, a condition sometimes called *flash pulmonary edema*. Pulmonary edema can also develop slowly, especially when it is caused by noncardiac disorders such as kidney injury and other conditions that cause fluid overload. The left ventricle cannot handle the volume overload, and blood volume and pressure build up in the left atrium. The rapid increase in atrial pressure results in an acute increase in pulmonary venous pressure, which produces an increase in hydrostatic pressure that forces fluid out of the pulmonary capillaries and into the interstitial spaces and alveoli (Norris, 2019).

- **Gerontologic Considerations icons** highlight information that pertains specifically to the care of the older adult patient. In the United States, older adults comprise the fastest-growing segment of the population.



Gerontologic Considerations

During the normal aging process, the nervous system undergoes many changes and is more vulnerable to illness. Age-related changes in the nervous system vary in degree and must be distinguished from those due to disease. It is important for clinicians not to attribute abnormality or dysfunction to aging without appropriate investigation. For example, although diminished strength and agility are a normal part of aging, localized weakness can only be attributed to disease.



- **Physiology/Pathophysiology figures** include illustrations and algorithms describing normal physiologic and pathophysiologic processes.

Features to Develop the Nurse as Educator

Health education is a primary responsibility of the nursing profession. Nursing care is directed toward promoting, maintaining, and restoring health; preventing illness; and helping patients and families adapt to the residual effects of illness. Patient education and health promotion are central to all of these nursing activities.

- **Patient Education charts and sections** help the nurse prepare the patient and family for procedures, assist them in understanding the patient's condition, and explain to them how to provide self-care.

Chart 20-5 **PATIENT EDUCATION**
Breathing Exercises

General Instructions

The nurse instructs the patient to:

- Breathe slowly and rhythmically to exhale completely and empty the lungs completely.
- Inhale through the nose to filter, humidify, and warm the air before it enters the lungs.
- Breathe more slowly by prolonging the exhalation time when feeling out of breath.
- Keep the air moist with a humidifier.

Diaphragmatic Breathing

Goal: To use and strengthen the diaphragm during breathing

The nurse instructs the patient to:

- Place one hand on the abdomen (just below the ribs) and the other hand on the middle of the chest to increase the awareness of the position of the diaphragm and its function in breathing.
- Breathe in slowly and deeply through the nose, letting the abdomen protrude as far as possible.
- Breathe out through pursed lips while tightening (contracting) the abdominal muscles.
- Press firmly inward and upward on the abdomen while breathing out.
- Repeat for 1 min; follow with a rest period of 2 min.

- Gradually increase duration up to 5 min, several times a day (before meals and at bedtime).

Pursed-Lip Breathing

Goal: To prolong exhalation and increase airway pressure during expiration, thus reducing the amount of trapped air and the amount of airway resistance

The nurse instructs the patient to:

- Inhale through the nose while slowly counting to 3—the amount of time needed to say “Smell a rose.”
- Exhale slowly and evenly against pursed lips while tightening the abdominal muscles. (Pursing the lips increases intratracheal pressure; exhaling through the mouth offers less resistance to expired air.)
- Count to 7 slowly while prolonging expiration through pursed lips—the length of time to say “Blow out the candle.”
- While sitting in a chair: Fold arms over the abdomen. Inhale through the nose while counting to 3 slowly. Bend forward and exhale slowly through pursed lips while counting to 7 slowly.
- While walking: Inhale while walking two steps. Exhale through pursed lips while walking four or five steps.

- **Health Promotion charts** review important points that the nurse should discuss with the patient to prevent common health problems from developing.

Chart
12-2



HEALTH PROMOTION

American Cancer Society Guidelines on Nutrition and Physical Activity for Cancer Prevention

Individual Choices

Achieve and Maintain a Healthy Weight Throughout Life

- Be as lean as possible throughout life without being underweight.
- Avoid excessive weight gain at all ages. For those who are currently overweight or have obesity, losing even a small amount of weight has health benefits and is a good place to start.
- Engage in regular physical activity and limit consumption of high-calorie foods and beverages as key strategies for maintaining a healthy weight.

Adopt a Physically Active Lifestyle

- Adults should engage in at least 150 minutes of moderate-intensity or 75 minutes of vigorous-intensity physical activity each week, or an equivalent combination, preferably spread throughout the week.
- Children and adolescents should engage in at least 1 hour of moderate- or vigorous-intensity physical activity each day, with vigorous-intensity activity at least 3 days each week.
- Limit sedentary behavior such as sitting, lying down and watching television, and other forms of screen-based entertainment.
- Doing any intentional physical activity above usual activities, no matter what one's level of activity, can have many health benefits.

Consume a Healthy Diet, with an Emphasis on Plant Sources

- Choose foods and beverages in amounts that help achieve and maintain a healthy weight.
- Limit consumption of processed meat and red meats.
- Eat at least 2½ cups of vegetables and fruits each day.
- Choose whole grains in preference to processed (refined) grains.

If You Drink Alcoholic Beverages, Limit Consumption

- Drink no more than one drink per day for women or two per day for men.

Community Action

Public, private, and community organizations should work collaboratively at national, state, and local levels to implement policy environmental changes that:

- Increase access to affordable, healthy foods in communities, worksites, and schools, and decrease access to and marketing of foods and beverages of low nutritional value, particularly to youth.
- Provide safe, enjoyable, and accessible environments for physical activity in schools and worksites, and for transportation and recreation in communities.

Adapted from American Cancer Society. (2019i). ACS guidelines on nutrition and physical activity for cancer. Retrieved on 9/28/2018 at: www.cancer.org/healthy/eat-healthy-get-active/acs-guidelines-nutrition-physical-activity-cancer-prevention.html.

- **Home Care Checklists** review points that should be covered as part of home care education prior to discharge from the health care facility.

Chart
41-9



HOME CARE CHECKLIST

Managing Ostomy Care

At the completion of education, the patient and/or caregiver will be able to:

- Name the procedure that was performed and identify changes in anatomic structure or function as well as changes in ADLs, IADLs, roles, relationships, and spirituality.
 - Describe the frequency and character of effluent.
- Identify sources for obtaining ostomy care/appliance supplies.
- State the name, dose, side effects, frequency, and schedule for all medications.
- Demonstrate ostomy care, including wound cleansing, irrigation, and appliance changing.
- Describe the importance of assessing and maintaining peristomal skin integrity.
- Identify dietary restrictions (foods that can cause diarrhea and constipation), process for reintroduction of foods, as well as foods that may be encouraged.
- Identify measures to be used to promote fluid and electrolyte balance.
- Describe potential complications and necessary actions to be taken if complications occur.
- Relate how to reach primary provider with questions or complications.
 - Identify how to contact wound-ostomy-contenance or home health nurse.
- State time and date of follow-up medical appointments, therapy, and testing.
- Identify sources of support (e.g., friends, relatives, faith community, ostomy support, caregiver support).
- Identify the need for health promotion, disease prevention, and screening activities.

ADLs, activities of daily living; IADLs, instrumental activities of daily living.

Features to Develop the Nurse as Patient Advocate

Nurses advocate for patients by protecting their rights (including the right to health care) and assisting patients and their families in making informed decisions about health care.

- **All new! Ethical Dilemma charts** provide a clinical scenario, discussion points, and questions to help analyze fundamental ethical principles related to the dilemma.

Chart 48-9 ETHICAL DILEMMA How Can Patient Rights Be Discerned during a Pandemic?

Case Scenario

B.J. is a 74-year-old widow with chronic kidney disease (CKD) managed with HD three times weekly in an outpatient dialysis center. She is admitted to the medical unit where you work as a staff nurse with fluid retention and dyspnea. It is reported that B.J. had been a “no show” at the dialysis center for at least the past week. As part of her therapeutic plan, she is supposed to be dialyzed while in the hospital. As you enter her room to prepare her for transport to the hospital’s dialysis center, you find B.J. humming to herself, clapping her hands, and smiling. When you explain to her that she is going to be transported to the dialysis center, she says “Honey, I am not going anywhere. I want to see Jesus. It is my time and I am ready to see the Lord.” You have heard from the medical social worker that this is not B.J.’s first admission to the hospital for poor adherence to her outpatient dialysis treatment. During past hospitalizations, her three adult daughters would visit her together and effectively cajole her into receiving dialysis treatments. Reportedly, the daughters have a loving and supportive relationship with each other and their mother. However, there is an outbreak of coronavirus disease 2019 (COVID-19) within your community and the hospital has responded with a no-visitor policy throughout the facility, so B.J.’s daughters may not visit her.

Discussion

The principle of autonomy is considered sacrosanct. Patients have the right to refuse treatments, even if those treatments are life-saving. However, in this particular instance, B.J. could be delirious as a manifestation of her poorly managed CKD. If she is delirious, it may be determined that she lacks the capacity to

make her own decisions. Her daughters might be her surrogates and legally responsible to make health care decisions for her. However, her daughters’ prohibition to visit her while she is hospitalized hampers their ability to discuss her options with her and gain her assent for treatment.

Analysis

- Describe the ethical principles that are in conflict in this case (see Chapter 1, Chart 1-7). Can the principle of beneficence and wishing to “do good” for B.J. trump her autonomous right to refuse treatment? Can she be forced to undergo dialysis?
- What if it is determined that B.J. lacks the capacity to make informed decisions? On the contrary, what if it is determined that B.J. is not delirious and has the capacity to refuse to be dialyzed? Describe methods that you might employ to engage B.J.’s daughters so that they might be able to communicate with her and with each other as a family unit.
- What resources might be mobilized to be of assistance to B.J., her daughters, and the health care team so that a treatment plan that preserves B.J.’s dignity during this pandemic might be devised?

References

Hulkower, A. (2020). Learning from COVID. *Hastings Center Report*, 50(3), 16–17.

Resources

See Chapter 1, Chart 1-10 for Steps of an Ethical Analysis and Ethics Resources.

Chart 30-2 NURSING RESEARCH PROFILE Fatigue and Sleep Disturbances in Adults with Acute Leukemia

Bryant, A., Gosselin, T., Coffman, E., et al. (2018). Symptoms, mobility, and function, and quality of life in adults with acute leukemia during initial hospitalization. *Oncology Nursing Forum*, 45(5), 653–664.

Purpose

Patients newly diagnosed with acute leukemia require hospitalization, typically for 4 to 6 weeks, for managing aggressive induction therapy and its toxicities. These symptoms can greatly impact the patient’s quality of life and ability to perform activities of daily living. The purpose of this study was to evaluate global, physical, and mental health symptoms in adults with newly diagnosed acute leukemia.

Design

This was a prospective, longitudinal study with a total of 49 adult participants, including 36 males and 13 females. Data were collected at time of hospitalization (baseline), then weekly until discharge from hospital. Evaluation tools for data included: the Patient-Reported Outcomes Measurement Information System (PROMIS) to determine several self-reported quality-of-life measures such as fatigue, anxiety, depression, pain, sleep disturbances, and global physical and mental health; the Functional Assessment of Cancer Therapy–Leukemia (FACT-Leu) to measure symptom concerns that are leukemic specific; Karnofsky Performance Status Scale (KPS) to measure function; and the Timed UP and Go Test (TUG) to measure physical mobility.

Findings

This study was the largest, to date, to evaluate the symptoms and quality of life of patients newly diagnosed with acute leukemia during hospitalization. All participants had one or more comorbidities, as well as a group mean body mass index of 30.8 (SD = 6.7), indicative of being overweight or having obesity, at time of hospitalization. No significant differences were seen in global mental health, pain, or KPS during hospitalization. There were significant decreases in fatigue ($p < 0.001$), anxiety ($p < 0.001$), depression ($p = 0.004$), and sleep disturbance ($p = 0.005$) from baseline to hospital discharge. Also significant were a decrease in leukemic symptoms ($p < 0.001$), indicating improved leukemic outcomes, which is the goal of therapy.

Nursing Implications

Nurses need to be aware of factors that can impact sleep in patients with cancer, both during and following treatment. As fatigue plays a major role in sleep disturbances, the nurse needs to assess for and develop strategies to address both concerns, especially while the patient is in the hospital. Poor sleep, fatigue, and pain can all contribute to the increased risk for falls, so safety issues should also be addressed with the patient and the patient’s family. The nurse should encourage the patient to exercise and have some physical activity as part of the daily routine, to decrease fatigue while enhancing sleep. Additionally, the nurse should have a good understanding of the symptoms common to patients with leukemia and interventions to manage them as they occur.

Features to Develop the Nurse as Researcher

Nurses identify potential research problems and questions to increase nursing knowledge and improve patient care. The use and evaluation of research findings in nursing practice are essential to further the science of nursing.

- **All new and in every chapter! Nursing Research Profiles** identify the implications and applications of nursing research findings for evidence-based nursing practice.

Features to Facilitate Learning

In addition to practice-oriented features, special features have been developed to help readers learn key information.

- **Concept Mastery Alerts** highlight and clarify fundamental nursing concepts to improve understanding of difficult topics, as identified by Misconception Alerts in Lippincott’s Adaptive Learning Powered by PrepU, an adaptive quizzing platform.

Concept Mastery Alert

It is important to remember the different types of cholesterol and the role of each as a risk factor for heart disease. HDL is the “good cholesterol,” and higher levels are better; LDL is the “bad cholesterol,” and lower levels are better.

- **Unfolding Patient Stories**, written by the National League for Nursing, are an engaging way to begin meaningful conversations in the classroom. These vignettes, which appear throughout the text near related content, feature patients from Wolters Kluwer's vSim for Nursing | Medical-Surgical (co-developed by Laerdal Medical) and DocuCare products; however, each Unfolding Patient Story in the book stands alone, not requiring purchase of these products. For your convenience, a list of these case studies, along with their location in the book, appears in the "Case Studies in This Book" section later in this front matter.
- Interactive learning tools available online enrich learning and are identified with icons in the text:



Concepts in Action Animations bring physiologic and pathophysiologic concepts to life.



Practice & Learn Case Studies present case scenarios and offer interactive exercises and questions to help you apply what you have learned.



Watch & Learn Video Clips reinforce skills from the textbook and appeal to visual and auditory learners.

- **All new! Critical Thinking Exercises** foster critical thinking and challenge you to apply textbook knowledge to clinical scenarios. Evidence-based practice (EBP) questions encourage you to apply best evidence from research findings to nursing interventions. Prioritization (PQ) questions ask you to consider the priorities for nursing care for specific patients and conditions. Interprofessional collaboration (IPC) exercises challenge you to identify the roles and responsibilities of the professional nurse and of interprofessional colleagues in collaboratively delivering quality patient-centered care.

- **References** cited are listed at the end of each chapter and include updated, current sources.
- **Resources** lists at the end of each chapter include sources of additional information, Web sites, agencies, and patient education materials.

REFERENCES

*Asterisk indicates nursing research.

Books

- American College of Surgeons. (2018). *Advanced trauma life support* (10th ed.). Chicago, IL: Author.
- Atanelov, Z., & Rebstock, S. E. (2020) Nasopharyngeal airway. *StatPearls [Internet]*. Treasure Island, FL: StatPearls Publishing. Retrieved on 4/6/2020 at: www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK513220/
- Emergency Nurses Association (ENA). (2017). *Emergency nursing scope and standards of practice* (2nd ed.). Des Plaines, IL: Author.
- Emergency Nurses Association (ENA). (2020a). *Sheehy's manual of emergency care* (7th ed.). St. Louis, MO: Mosby.
- Holleran, R., Wolfe, A., & Frakes, M. (2018). *Patient transport: Principles & practice* (5th ed.). St Louis, MO: Elsevier.

Unfolding Patient Stories: Doris Bowman • Part 2



Recall from Chapter 12 **Doris Bowman**, who is undergoing a total abdominal hysterectomy with bilateral salpingo-oophorectomy. What are potential postoperative complications that the nurse should consider? What assessments and interventions are done by the nurse to monitor for early detection or to prevent these complications? Describe the discharge education provided by the nurse on self-care monitoring required of the patient at home and what should be reported to the health care provider.

Care for Doris and other patients in a realistic virtual environment: **vSim for Nursing** (thepoint.lww.com/vSimMedicalSurgical). Practice documenting these patients' care in DocuCare (thepoint.lww.com/DocuCareEHR).

CRITICAL THINKING EXERCISES

- ipc** You are caring for a 53-year-old woman in the outpatient clinic where you work; she is newly diagnosed with urinary incontinence. What type of referrals might be appropriate for this patient? What members of the interprofessional health care team do you anticipate as being integral to the care of this patient?
- ebp** You notice an increase in the number of CAUTIs among patients on the medical-surgical unit where you work. What are the evidence-based management techniques used in CAUTI prevention? Identify the criteria used to evaluate the strength of the evidence for these practices. How will you individualize these techniques for your unit?
- pq** A 65-year-old man is admitted to the medical-surgical nursing unit where you work with bladder cancer. He is scheduled for a radical cystectomy with an orthotopic neobladder reconstruction. Identify the priorities, approach, and techniques you would use to provide care for this patient in the preoperative phase of care. How will your priorities, approach, and techniques differ in the postoperative phase of care?

Resources

- American Association of Poison Control Centers (AAPCC), www.aapcc.org
- American College of Emergency Physicians (ACEP), www.acep.org
- American College of Surgeons (ACS), Injury Prevention and Control, www.facs.org/quality-programs/trauma/ipc
- American Heart Association, www.heart.org
- American Trauma Society (ATS), www.amtrauma.org/default.aspx
- American Red Cross, Prepare for Emergencies, www.redcross.org/get-help/prepare-for-emergencies/types-of-emergencies
- Divers Alert Network (DAN), www.diversalertnetwork.org
- Emergency Nurses Association (ENA), www.ena.org
- National Capital Poison, Poison Control Center, poison.org
- National Center on Elder Abuse (NCEA), ncea.acl.gov
- National Center for Health Statistics (NCHS), cdc.gov/nchs/
- National Human Trafficking Hotline, www.humantraffickinghotline.org

Contents

Volume 1

UNIT

1

Principles of Nursing Practice 2

- 1 Professional Nursing Practice 4**
 - Nursing 5
 - The Patient: Consumer of Nursing and Health Care 5**
 - The Patient's Basic Needs: Maslow Hierarchy of Needs 6
 - Health 6**
 - Wellness 6
 - Health Promotion 6
 - Health Care 7
 - Influences on Health Care Delivery 7**
 - Population Demographics 7
 - Changing Patterns of Disease and Wellness 7
 - Advances in Technology and Genetics 8
 - Quality, Safety, and Evidence-Based Practice 9
 - Interprofessional Collaborative Practice 9
 - The Practice of Nursing 10**
 - Critical Thinking 10
 - The Nursing Process 12
 - Ethical Nursing Care 23
- 2 Medical-Surgical Nursing 33**
 - The Practice of Nursing in Today's Health Care Delivery System 34**
 - Medical-Surgical Nursing 34
 - The Nurse as Coordinator of Care Transitions 35
 - Critical-Care Nursing 36
 - Rehabilitation Nursing 36
 - *Nursing Process: The Patient with Self-Care Deficits in Activities of Daily Living 37*
 - *Nursing Process: The Patient with Impaired Physical Mobility 40*
 - Home Health Nursing 49
 - Discharge Planning for Transition to the Community or Home Care Setting 53
 - Continuing the Transition through Community Resources and Referrals 53
- 3 Health Education and Health Promotion 56**
 - Purpose of Health Education 56**
 - Meeting Nursing Standards 57
 - Supporting Informed Decision Making and Self-Care 57
 - Promoting Adherence to the Therapeutic Regimen 57
- The Nature of Teaching and Learning 58**
 - Learning Readiness 59
 - The Learning Environment 60
 - Teaching Techniques and Resources 60
- The Nursing Process in Patient Education 60**
 - Assessment 61
 - Nursing Diagnosis 61
 - Planning 61
 - Implementation 63
 - Evaluation 63
- Health Promotion 63**
 - Definition 63
 - Health Promotion Models 64
 - Components of Health Promotion 65
- Health Promotion Strategies Throughout the Lifespan 66**
 - Adolescents 66
 - Young and Middle-Aged Adults 66
 - Gerontologic Considerations 68
- Nursing Implications of Health Promotion 68**
- 4 Adult Health and Physical, Nutritional, and Cultural Assessment 71**
 - The Role of the Nurse Conducting a Health Assessment 72**
 - Effective Communication 72
 - Cultural Concepts 72
 - Cultural Competence 73
 - Ethical Use of Health Assessment Data 73
 - The Role of Technology 73
 - Assessment in the Home or Community 73
 - Health History 73**
 - The Informant 74
 - Components of the Health History 74
 - Physical Assessment 83**
 - Examination Considerations 83
 - Components of the Physical Examination 83
 - Nutritional Assessment 85**
 - Lifespan Considerations 86
 - Components of Nutritional Assessment 86
 - Factors Influencing Nutritional Status in Various Situations 91
 - Analysis of Nutritional Status 91
 - Cultural Assessment 91**
 - Culturally Mediated Considerations 91
- 5 Stress and Inflammatory Responses 97**
 - Fundamental Concepts 98**
 - Constancy and Homeostasis 98
 - Stress and Adaptation 98
 - Overview of Stress 99**
 - Types of Stressors 99
 - Stress as a Stimulus for Disease 99

- Psychological Responses to Stress 99
- Physiologic Response to Stress 100
- Maladaptive Responses to Stress 103
- Indicators of Stress 103
- Stress at the Cellular Level 104**
 - Control of the Steady State 104
 - Cellular Adaptation 105
 - Cellular Injury 106
 - Cellular Response to Injury: Inflammation 108
 - Cellular Healing 109
- Nursing Management 109**
 - Promoting a Healthy Lifestyle 110
 - Enhancing Coping Strategies 111
 - Educating About Relaxation Techniques 111
 - Educating About Stress Management 112
 - Promoting Family Health 112
 - Enhancing Social Support 113
 - Recommending Support and Therapy Groups 113
- The Role of Stress in Health Patterns 113**
- 6 Genetics and Genomics in Nursing 116**
 - Genomic Framework for Nursing Practice 117**
 - Integrating Genetic and Genomic Knowledge 118**
 - Genes and Their Role in Human Variation 118
 - Inheritance Patterns 121
 - Chromosomal Differences and Genetic Conditions 124
 - Genetic and Genomic Technologies in Practice 125**
 - Genetic Testing 125
 - Genetic Screening 126
 - Population Screening 127
 - Testing and Screening for Adult-Onset Conditions 127**
 - Single Gene Conditions 128
 - Genomic Conditions 128
 - The Nursing Role in Testing and Screening for Adult-Onset Conditions 130
 - Personalized Genomic Treatments 130**
 - Pharmacogenomics 130
 - Ethical, Legal, and Social Issues Surrounding Genetics 131**
 - Ethical Concerns 131
 - Legal Aspects of Personalized Health Care 132
 - Ancestry, Cultural, Social, and Spiritual Concerns Related to Genetic and Genomic Practice 132
 - Applications of Genetics and Genomics in Nursing Practice 134**
 - Genetics and Genomics in Health Assessment 134
 - Genetic Counseling and Evaluation Services 136
 - Genetics and Genomics Tomorrow 138**
- 7 Disability and Chronic Illness 141**
 - Disability 141**
 - Definitions of Disability 141
 - Prevalence of Disability 142
 - Characteristics of Disability 142
 - Federal Legislation 146
 - Right of Access to Health Care 146**
 - Barriers to Health Care 149
 - Federal Assistance Programs 150
- Nursing Care of Patients with Disability 151**
 - Nursing Considerations during Hospitalization 151
 - Health Promotion and Prevention 152
 - Significance of “People-First” Language 153
 - Gerontologic Considerations 153
 - Disability in Medical-Surgical Nursing Practice 153
 - Home, Community-Based, and Transitional Care 154
- Chronic Disease and Chronic Illness 155**
 - Multiple Chronic Conditions 155
 - Health Disparities and Chronic Disease 156
 - Definitions of Chronic Diseases or Conditions 157
 - Prevalence and Causes of Chronic Conditions 157
- Prevention of Chronic Disease 159**
 - Characteristics of Chronic Conditions 159
 - Implications of Managing Chronic Conditions 161
 - Veterans Considerations 161
 - Gerontologic Considerations 161
- Nursing Care of Patients with Chronic Conditions 162**
 - Home, Community-Based, and Transitional Care 162
 - Nursing Care for Special Populations with Chronic Illness 163
- 8 Management of the Older Adult Patient 166**
 - Overview of Aging 167**
 - Demographics of Aging 167
 - Health Status of the Older Adult 167
 - Nursing Care of the Older Adult 168
 - Theories of Aging 168
 - Age-Related Changes 168**
 - Physical Aspects of Aging 168
 - Psychosocial Aspects of Aging 176
 - Cognitive Aspects of Aging 178
 - Pharmacologic Aspects of Aging 179
 - Mental Health Problems in the Older Adult 180**
 - Depression 181
 - Substance Use Disorder 181
 - Delirium 182
 - Alzheimer’s Disease 182
 - Pathophysiology 183
 - Clinical Manifestations 183
 - Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 184
 - Medical Management 184
 - Nursing Management 184
 - Vascular Dementia 186
 - Additional Aspects of Health Care of the Older Adult 186**
 - Geriatric Syndromes 186
 - Elder Neglect and Abuse 189
 - Social Services 189
 - Health Care Costs of Aging 189
 - Home Health Care 190
 - Hospice Services 190
 - Aging with a Disability 190
 - Ethical and Legal Issues Affecting the Older Adult 190

UNIT 2 Concepts and Principles of Patient Management 194

9 Pain Management 196

Fundamental Concepts 197

- Definition of Pain 198
- Effects of Pain 198
- Types and Categories of Pain 198

Pain Assessment 202

- Performing the Comprehensive Pain Assessment:
 - Patient Interview 203
- Reassessing Pain 206

Pain Management 206

- Pharmacologic Management of Pain: Multimodal Analgesia 206
- Nonpharmacologic Methods of Pain Management 218
- Nursing Implications of Pain Management 219

10 Fluid and Electrolytes 224

Fundamental Concepts 225

- Amount and Composition of Body Fluids 225
- Regulation of Fluid within the Body
 - Compartments 226
- Systemic Routes of Gains and Losses 228
- Laboratory Tests for Evaluating Fluid Status 229
- Homeostatic Mechanisms 230
- Gerontologic Considerations 232

FLUID VOLUME DISTURBANCES 233

Hypovolemia 233

- Pathophysiology 233
- Clinical Manifestations 233
- Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 233
- Gerontologic Considerations 234
- Medical Management 234
- Nursing Management 236

Hypervolemia 236

- Pathophysiology 237
- Clinical Manifestations 237
- Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 237
- Medical Management 237
- Nursing Management 238

ELECTROLYTE IMBALANCES 239

Sodium Imbalances 239

- Sodium Deficit (Hyponatremia) 239
 - Pathophysiology 239
 - Clinical Manifestations 240
 - Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 240
 - Medical Management 240
 - Nursing Management 241

Sodium Excess (Hypernatremia) 241

- Pathophysiology 242
- Clinical Manifestations 242
- Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 242
- Medical Management 242
- Nursing Management 242

Potassium Imbalances 243

- Potassium Deficit (Hypokalemia) 243
 - Pathophysiology 243
 - Clinical Manifestations 244

- Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 244
- Medical Management 245
- Nursing Management 245

Potassium Excess (Hyperkalemia) 245

- Pathophysiology 246
- Clinical Manifestations 246
- Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 246
- Medical Management 246
- Nursing Management 247

Calcium Imbalances 247

Calcium Deficit (Hypocalcemia) 248

- Pathophysiology 248
- Clinical Manifestations 248
- Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 249
- Medical Management 249
- Nursing Management 250

Calcium Excess (Hypercalcemia) 250

- Pathophysiology 250
- Clinical Manifestations 250
- Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 250
- Medical Management 251
- Nursing Management 251

Magnesium Imbalances 251

Magnesium Deficit (Hypomagnesemia) 252

- Pathophysiology 252
- Clinical Manifestations 252
- Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 253
- Medical Management 253
- Nursing Management 253

Magnesium Excess (Hypermagnesemia) 253

- Pathophysiology 253
- Clinical Manifestations 253
- Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 253
- Medical Management 254
- Nursing Management 254

Phosphorus Imbalances 254

Phosphorus Deficit (Hypophosphatemia) 254

- Pathophysiology 254
- Clinical Manifestations 255
- Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 255
- Medical Management 255
- Nursing Management 256

Phosphorus Excess (Hyperphosphatemia) 256

- Pathophysiology 256
- Clinical Manifestations 256
- Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 256
- Medical Management 256
- Nursing Management 257

Chloride Imbalances 257

Chloride Deficit (Hypochloremia) 257

- Pathophysiology 257
- Clinical Manifestations 257
- Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 258
- Medical Management 258
- Nursing Management 258

Chloride Excess (Hyperchloremia) 258

- Pathophysiology 258
- Clinical Manifestations 258
- Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 258
- Medical Management 258
- Nursing Management 258

ACID-BASE DISTURBANCES 258**Acute and Chronic Metabolic Acidosis (Base Bicarbonate Deficit) 259**

- Pathophysiology 260
- Clinical Manifestations 260
- Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 260
- Medical Management 261

Acute and Chronic Metabolic Alkalosis (Base Bicarbonate Excess) 261

- Pathophysiology 261
- Clinical Manifestations 261
- Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 262
- Medical Management 262

Acute and Chronic Respiratory Acidosis (Carbonic Acid Excess) 262

- Pathophysiology 262
- Clinical Manifestations 262
- Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 263
- Medical Management 263

Acute and Chronic Respiratory Alkalosis (Carbonic Acid Deficit) 263

- Pathophysiology 263
- Clinical Manifestations 263
- Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 263
- Medical Management 263

Mixed Acid-Base Disorders 263

- Compensation 264
- Blood Gas Analysis 264

PARENTERAL FLUID THERAPY 264**Purpose 264****Types of Intravenous Solutions 264**

- Isotonic Fluids 264
- Hypotonic Fluids 266
- Hypertonic Fluids 266
- Other Intravenous Therapies 266

Nursing Management of the Patient Receiving Intravenous Therapy 266

- Managing Systemic Complications 266
- Managing Local Complications 267
- Promoting Home, Community-Based, and Transitional Care 269

11 Shock, Sepsis, and Multiple Organ Dysfunction Syndrome 273**Overview of Shock 274**

- Normal Cellular Function 274
- Pathophysiology 274

Stages of Shock 275

- Compensatory Stage 276
- Clinical Manifestations 276
- Medical Management 277
- Nursing Management 277
- Progressive Stage 279
- Pathophysiology 279
- Clinical Manifestations 279
- Medical Management 280
- Nursing Management 280
- Irreversible Stage 281
- Medical Management 281
- Nursing Management 281

General Management Strategies in Shock 282

- Fluid Replacement 282
- Vasoactive Medication Therapy 283
- Nutritional Support 283

Hypovolemic Shock 285

- Pathophysiology 285
- Medical Management 285
- Nursing Management 287

Cardiogenic Shock 287

- Pathophysiology 287
- Clinical Manifestations 287
- Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 288
- Medical Management 288
- Nursing Management 289

Distributive Shock 290

- Sepsis and Septic Shock 291
- Pathophysiology 292
- Medical Management 293
- Nursing Management 294
- Neurogenic Shock 296
- Medical Management 296
- Nursing Management 296
- Anaphylactic Shock 296
- Medical Management 296
- Nursing Management 297

Multiple Organ Dysfunction Syndrome 297

- Pathophysiology 297
- Clinical Manifestations 297
- Medical Management 298
- Nursing Management 298

Promoting Home, Community-Based, and Transitional Care 298

- Educating Patients About Self-Care 298
- Continuing and Transitional Care 298

12 Management of Patients with Oncologic Disorders 301**Epidemiology 302****Pathophysiology of the Malignant Process 303**

- Carcinogenesis 304
- Proliferative Patterns 304
- Role of the Immune System 307

Detection and Prevention of Cancer 308

- Primary Prevention 308
- Secondary Prevention 308
- Tertiary Prevention 309

Diagnosis of Cancer 309

- Tumor Staging and Grading 309
- Anatomic Stage Group 312

Management of Cancer 312**Surgery 312**

- Diagnostic Surgery 312
- Surgery as Primary Treatment 313
- Prophylactic Surgery 314
- Palliative Surgery 314
- Reconstructive Surgery 315
- Nursing Management 315

Radiation Therapy 315

- Radiation Dosage 316
- Administration of Radiation 317
- Toxicity 318

- Nursing Management 318
- Protecting Caregivers 319
- Chemotherapy 319
- Cell Kill and the Cell Cycle 319**
 - Classification of Chemotherapeutic Agents 319
 - Adjunct Chemotherapeutic Agents 320
 - Administration of Chemotherapeutic Agents 320
 - Nursing Management 325
 - Protecting Caregivers 326
- Hematopoietic Stem Cell Transplantation 326
 - Types of Hematopoietic Stem Cell Transplantation 326
 - Nursing Management 328
- Immunotherapy and Targeted Therapy 329
 - Immunotherapy 329
 - Targeted Therapies 332
 - Nursing Management 333
- Complementary, Alternative, and Integrative Health Therapies 335
 - COVID-19 Considerations 335
- Nursing Care of the Patient with Cancer 336**
 - Maintaining Tissue Integrity 336
 - Promoting Nutrition 350
 - Relieving Pain 351
 - Decreasing Fatigue 352
 - Improving Body Image and Self-Esteem 354
 - Addressing Sexuality 354
 - Assisting in the Grieving Process 354
 - Management of Psychosocial Distress 355
 - Monitoring and Managing Potential Complications 355
 - Promoting Home, Community-Based, and Transitional Care 357
 - Gerontologic Considerations 358
- Cancer Survivorship 359**
 - Providing Care to the Patient with Advanced Cancer 360
- 13 Palliative and End-of-Life Care 367**
 - Palliative Care and End-of-Life Care 368**
 - The Evolution of End-of-Life Care 369
 - Settings for Palliative Care and End-of-Life Care 369**
 - Institution-Based Palliative Care 370
 - Outpatient-Based Palliative Care 371
 - Community-Based Palliative Care 372
 - Hospice Care 372
 - Communication in Palliative Care 373
 - Advanced Care Planning 375
 - Symptom Assessment and Management 376**
 - Expected Physiologic Changes 376
 - Time of Death 381
 - Providing Psychosocial and Spiritual Support 382**
 - Hope and Meaning in Illness 382
 - Providing Culturally Sensitive Care at the End-of-Life 382
 - Spiritual Care 383
 - Grief, Mourning, and Bereavement 384
 - Special Issues for the Nurse in End-of-Life Care 386**
 - Medically Administered Nutrition and Hydration 386
 - Palliative Sedation at the End-of-Life 386

- Clinicians' Attitudes toward Death 388
- Patient and Family Concerns 388
- Professional Caregiver Issues 389
- Supporting Ourselves 389

UNIT 3 Perioperative Concepts and Nursing Management 394

- 14 Preoperative Nursing Management 396**
 - Perioperative Nursing 397
 - Advances in Surgical and Anesthesia Approaches 397
 - Surgical Classifications 397
 - Preadmission Testing 397
 - Special Considerations during the Perioperative Period 399
 - Gerontologic Considerations 399
 - Bariatric Patients 400
 - Patients with Disability 400
 - Patients Undergoing Ambulatory Surgery 400
 - Patients Undergoing Emergency Surgery 400
 - Required Preoperative Documents 401
 - Preoperative Assessment 402
 - Nutritional and Fluid Status 402
 - Dentition 403
 - Drug or Alcohol Use 403
 - Respiratory Status 404
 - Cardiovascular Status 404
 - Hepatic and Renal Function 405
 - Endocrine Function 405
 - Immune Function 405
 - Previous Medication Use 406
 - Psychosocial Factors 407
 - Spiritual and Cultural Beliefs 407
 - Preoperative Nursing Interventions 408
 - Providing Patient Education 408
 - Providing Psychosocial Interventions 411
 - Maintaining Patient Safety 411
 - Managing Nutrition and Fluids 411
 - Preparing the Bowel 411
 - Preparing the Skin 411
 - Immediate Preoperative Nursing Interventions 412
 - Administering Medication 413
 - Maintaining the Preoperative Record 413
 - Preoperative Patient Warming 413
 - Attending to Family Needs 413
 - Expected Patient Outcomes 414
- 15 Intraoperative Nursing Management 416**
 - The Surgical Team 417
 - The Patient 417
 - The Circulating Nurse 419
 - The Scrub Role 420
 - The Surgeon 420
 - The Registered Nurse First Assistant 420
 - The Anesthesiologist and CRNA 420
 - Safety and Infection Prevention 420
 - The Surgical Environment 421
 - Prevention of OR Fires 421
 - Surgical Attire 421

Principles of Surgical Asepsis and Sterile Technique 422
Health Hazards Associated with the Surgical Environment 423

Robotics 424

The Surgical Experience 424

Types of Anesthesia and Sedation 424

Potential Intraoperative Complications 430

Anesthesia Awareness 430

Nausea and Vomiting 431

Anaphylaxis 431

Hypoxia and Other Respiratory Complications 431

Hypothermia 431

Malignant Hyperthermia 432

Pathophysiology 432

Clinical Manifestations 432

Medical Management 432

Nursing Management 432

- *Nursing Process: The Patient during Surgery* 432

16 Postoperative Nursing Management 437

Care of the Patient in the Postanesthesia Care Unit 437

Phases of Postanesthesia Care 437

Admitting the Patient to the Postanesthesia Care Unit 438

Nursing Management in the Postanesthesia Care Unit 438

Preparing the Postoperative Patient for Direct Discharge 444

Care of the Hospitalized Postoperative Patient 444

Receiving the Patient in the Clinical Unit 445

Nursing Management After Surgery 445

- *Nursing Process: The Hospitalized Patient Recovering from Surgery* 446

Endoscopic Procedures 490

Biopsy 492

18 Management of Patients with Upper Respiratory Tract Disorders 494

UPPER AIRWAY INFECTIONS 495

Rhinitis 495

Pathophysiology 495

Clinical Manifestations 496

Medical Management 496

Nursing Management 497

Viral Rhinitis (Common Cold) 497

Clinical Manifestations 497

Medical Management 497

Nursing Management 498

Rhinosinusitis 499

Acute Rhinosinusitis 499

Pathophysiology 499

Clinical Manifestations 499

Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 499

Complications 500

Medical Management 500

Nursing Management 500

Chronic Rhinosinusitis and Recurrent Acute Rhinosinusitis 501

Pathophysiology 501

Clinical Manifestations 501

Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 501

Complications 502

Medical Management 502

Nursing Management 502

Pharyngitis 503

Acute Pharyngitis 503

Pathophysiology 503

Clinical Manifestations 503

Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 503

Medical Management 504

Nursing Management 504

Chronic Pharyngitis 504

Clinical Manifestations 504

Medical Management 505

Nursing Management 505

Tonsillitis and Adenoiditis 505

Clinical Manifestations 505

Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 505

Medical Management 505

Nursing Management 506

Peritonsillar Abscess 506

Clinical Manifestations 506

Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 506

Medical Management 506

Nursing Management 507

Laryngitis 507

Clinical Manifestations 507

Medical Management 507

Nursing Management 507

- *Nursing Process: The Patient with Upper Airway Infection* 508

OBSTRUCTION AND TRAUMA OF THE UPPER RESPIRATORY AIRWAY 510

Obstructive Sleep Apnea 510

UNIT 4 Gas Exchange and Respiratory Function 460

17 Assessment of Respiratory Function 462

Anatomic and Physiologic Overview 463

Anatomy of the Respiratory System 463

Function of the Respiratory System 465

Gerontologic Considerations 470

Assessment 470

Health History 470

Physical Assessment of the Respiratory System 475

Assessment of Respiratory Function in the Patient Who Is Acutely or Critically Ill 483

Diagnostic Evaluation 486

Pulmonary Function Tests 486

Arterial Blood Gas Studies 487

Venous Blood Gas Studies 487

Pulse Oximetry 487

End-Tidal Carbon Dioxide 487

Cultures 488

Sputum Studies 488

Imaging Studies 488

Pathophysiology 510
 Clinical Manifestations 510
 Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 510
 Medical Management 510
 Nursing Management 511

Epistaxis 511

Medical Management 511
 Nursing Management 512

Nasal Obstruction 512

Medical Management 512
 Nursing Management 513

Fractures of the Nose 513

Clinical Manifestations 513
 Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 513
 Medical Management 513
 Nursing Management 513

Laryngeal Obstruction 513

Clinical Manifestations 514
 Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 514
 Medical Management 514

Cancer of the Larynx 514

Clinical Manifestations 515
 Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 515
 Medical Management 515

- *Nursing Process: The Patient Undergoing Laryngectomy* 518

19 Management of Patients with Chest and Lower Respiratory Tract Disorders 526

INFLAMMATORY AND INFECTIOUS PULMONARY DISORDERS 527

Atelectasis 527

Pathophysiology 528
 Clinical Manifestations 529
 Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 529
 Prevention 529
 Management 530

Acute Tracheobronchitis 530

Pathophysiology 530
 Clinical Manifestations 531
 Medical Management 531
 Nursing Management 531

Pneumonia 531

Classification 531
 Pathophysiology 534
 Risk Factors 534
 Clinical Manifestations 535
 Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 536
 Prevention 536
 Medical Management 536
 Gerontologic Considerations 540
 COVID-19 Considerations 540
 Complications 542

- *Nursing Process: The Patient with Bacterial Pneumonia* 542

Aspiration 545

Pathophysiology 545
 Prevention 545

Pulmonary Tuberculosis 546

Transmission and Risk Factors 546
 Pathophysiology 546
 Clinical Manifestations 547
 Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 548

Gerontologic Considerations 549

Medical Management 549

Nursing Management 550

Lung Abscess 551

Pathophysiology 551
 Clinical Manifestations 552
 Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 552
 Prevention 552
 Medical Management 552
 Nursing Management 552

Sarcoidosis 552

Pathophysiology 553
 Clinical Manifestations 553
 Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 553
 Medical Management 553
 Nursing Management 553

PLEURAL DISORDERS 553

Pleurisy 553

Clinical Manifestations 553
 Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 553
 Medical Management 554
 Nursing Management 554

Pleural Effusion 554

Pathophysiology 554
 Clinical Manifestations 554
 Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 554
 Medical Management 554
 Nursing Management 555

Empyema 555

Pathophysiology 555
 Clinical Manifestations 555
 Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 555
 Medical Management 555
 Nursing Management 556

ACUTE RESPIRATORY FAILURE 556

Pathophysiology 556
 Clinical Manifestations 556
 Medical Management 556
 Nursing Management 556

- *Nursing Process: The Patient Receiving Mechanical Ventilation* 563

Acute Respiratory Distress Syndrome 571

Pathophysiology 571
 Clinical Manifestations 571
 Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 572
 Medical Management 572
 Nursing Management 572
 COVID-19 Considerations 573

PULMONARY VASCULAR DISORDERS 574

Pulmonary Edema (Noncardiogenic) 574

Pulmonary Hypertension 574

Pathophysiology 574
 Clinical Manifestations 574
 Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 575
 Medical Management 575
 Nursing Management 576
 Pulmonary Heart Disease (Cor Pulmonale) 576

Pulmonary Embolism 576

OCCUPATIONAL LUNG DISEASE: PNEUMOCONIOSES 576

Veterans Considerations 577

CHEST TUMORS 577

- Lung Cancer (Bronchogenic Carcinoma) 577**
 - Pathophysiology 577
 - Classification and Staging 577
 - Risk Factors 578
 - Clinical Manifestations 579
 - Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 579
 - Medical Management 580
 - Surgical Management: Thoracotomy 580
 - Nursing Management of the Patient Having a Thoracotomy 580
 - Radiation Therapy 585
 - Chemotherapy 587
 - Immunotherapy 587
 - Palliative Care 587
 - Complications 587
 - Nursing Management 588
 - Gerontologic Considerations 588
- Tumors of the Mediastinum 588**
 - Clinical Manifestations 588
 - Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 588
 - Medical Management 589

CHEST TRAUMA 589

- Blunt Trauma 589**
 - Pathophysiology 589
 - Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 590
 - Medical Management 590
- Sternal and Rib Fractures 590**
 - Clinical Manifestations 590
 - Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 590
 - Medical Management 591
- Flail Chest 591**
 - Pathophysiology 591
 - Medical Management 591
- Pulmonary Contusion 592**
 - Pathophysiology 592
 - Clinical Manifestations 592
 - Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 592
 - Medical Management 592
- Penetrating Trauma 592**
 - Medical Management 593
- Pneumothorax 593**
 - Types of Pneumothorax 593
 - Clinical Manifestations 594
 - Medical Management 594
- Cardiac Tamponade 597**
- Subcutaneous Emphysema 597**

20 Management of Patients with Chronic

- Pulmonary Disease 602**
- Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease 603**
 - Pathophysiology 603
 - Risk Factors 605
 - Clinical Manifestations 606
 - Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 606
 - Complications 608
 - Medical Management 608
 - Nursing Management 619
- Bronchiectasis 631**
 - Pathophysiology 631
 - Clinical Manifestations 631

- Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 631
- Medical Management 631
- Nursing Management 632

Asthma 632

- Pathophysiology 633
- Clinical Manifestations 633
- Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 633
- Prevention 634
- Complications 634
- Medical Management 634
- Nursing Management 641

Status Asthmaticus 642

- Pathophysiology 642
- Clinical Manifestations 642
- Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 642
- Medical Management 642
- Nursing Management 643

Cystic Fibrosis 643

- Pathophysiology 643
- Clinical Manifestations 644
- Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 644
- Medical Management 644
- Nursing Management 645


UNIT 5 Cardiovascular and Circulatory Function 648**21 Assessment of Cardiovascular Function 650**

- Anatomic and Physiologic Overview 651**
 - Anatomy of the Heart 651
 - Function of the Heart 653
 - Gerontologic Considerations 656
 - Gender Considerations 656
- Assessment of the Cardiovascular System 656**
 - Health History 657
 - Physical Assessment 664
- Diagnostic Evaluation 672**
 - Laboratory Tests 672
 - Chest X-Ray and Fluoroscopy 674
 - Electrocardiography 674
 - Cardiac Stress Testing 677
 - Radionuclide Imaging 678
 - Additional Imaging 679
 - Echocardiography 680
 - Cardiac Catheterization 681
 - Electrophysiologic Testing 683
 - Hemodynamic Monitoring 683

22 Management of Patients with Arrhythmias and Conduction Problems 690**ARRHYTHMIAS 691**

- Normal Electrical Conduction 691**
- Influences on Heart Rate and Contractility 691**
- The Electrocardiogram 691**
 - Obtaining an Electrocardiogram 691
 - Components of the Electrocardiogram 693
- Analyzing the Electrocardiogram Rhythm Strip 694**
 - Determining Heart Rate from the Electrocardiogram 694

Determining Heart Rhythm from the
Electrocardiogram 695

Normal Sinus Rhythm 695

Types of Arrhythmias 696

Sinus Node Arrhythmias 696
Atrial Arrhythmias 697
Junctional Arrhythmias 704
Ventricular Arrhythmias 705
Conduction Abnormalities 708

- *Nursing Process: The Patient with an Arrhythmia* 710

ADJUNCT MODALITIES AND MANAGEMENT 712

Cardioversion and Defibrillation 712

Electrical Cardioversion 713
Defibrillation 714

Electrophysiology Studies 714

Pacemaker Therapy 715

Pacemaker Design and Types 715
Pacemaker Generator Functions 716
Complications of Pacemaker Use 717
Pacemaker Surveillance 719

Implantable Cardioverter Defibrillator 719

Nursing Management 720

23 Management of Patients with Coronary Vascular Disorders 725

Coronary Artery Disease 726

Coronary Atherosclerosis 726

Pathophysiology 726
Clinical Manifestations 727
Risk Factors 727
Prevention 728
Gender 732

Angina Pectoris 732

Pathophysiology 732
Clinical Manifestations 733
Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 733
Medical Management 733

- *Nursing Process: The Patient with Angina Pectoris* 735

Acute Coronary Syndrome and Myocardial Infarction 737

Pathophysiology 737
Clinical Manifestations 738
Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 738
Medical Management 740
Cardiac Rehabilitation 741

- *Nursing Process: The Patient with Acute Coronary Syndrome* 742

INVASIVE CORONARY ARTERY PROCEDURES 745

Percutaneous Coronary Interventions 745

Percutaneous Transluminal Coronary Angioplasty 745
Coronary Artery Stent 746
Complications 747
Postprocedure Care 747

Surgical Procedures: Coronary Artery

Revascularization 748

Traditional Coronary Artery Bypass Graft 749
Alternative Coronary Artery Bypass Graft
Techniques 750

Complications of Coronary Artery Bypass Graft 750
Nursing Management 750

24 Management of Patients with Structural, Infectious, and Inflammatory Cardiac Disorders 765

VALVULAR DISORDERS 766

Mitral Valve Prolapse 766

Pathophysiology 767
Clinical Manifestations 767
Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 767
Medical Management 767
Nursing Management 767

Mitral Regurgitation 767

Pathophysiology 767
Clinical Manifestations 768
Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 768
Medical Management 768

Mitral Stenosis 768

Pathophysiology 768
Clinical Manifestations 768
Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 768
Prevention 768
Medical Management 769

Aortic Regurgitation 769

Pathophysiology 769
Clinical Manifestations 769
Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 769
Prevention 769
Medical Management 769

Aortic Stenosis 769

Pathophysiology 770
Clinical Manifestations 770
Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 770
Prevention 770
Medical Management 770

Nursing Management: Valvular Heart Disorders 770

SURGICAL MANAGEMENT: VALVE REPAIR AND REPLACEMENT

PROCEDURES 771

Valvuloplasty 771

Commissurotomy 771
Annuloplasty 772
Leaflet Repair 772

Valve Replacement 772

Mechanical Valves 774
Tissue Valves 774

Nursing Management: Valvuloplasty and Valve Replacement 775

Cardiomyopathy 775
Pathophysiology 775
Clinical Manifestations 778
Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 778
Medical Management 778
Surgical Management 778

- *Nursing Process: The Patient with Cardiomyopathy* 782

INFECTIOUS DISEASES OF THE HEART 784

Rheumatic Endocarditis 784

Infective Endocarditis 785

Pathophysiology 785
Clinical Manifestations 785

Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 786
 Prevention 786
 Medical Management 786
 Surgical Management 786
 Nursing Management 786

Myocarditis 787

Pathophysiology 787
 Clinical Manifestations 787
 Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 787
 Medical Management 787
 Nursing Management 788

Pericarditis 788

Pathophysiology 788
 Clinical Manifestations 788
 Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 788
 Medical Management 789
 Nursing Management 789

- *Nursing Process: The Patient with Pericarditis* 789

25 Management of Patients with Complications from Heart Disease 793

HEART FAILURE 794

Pathophysiology 794
 Clinical Manifestations 796
 Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 798
 Medical Management 799
 Gerontologic Considerations 804

- *Nursing Process: The Patient with Heart Failure* 805

COMPLICATIONS FROM HEART DISEASE 811

Cardiogenic Shock 811

Thromboembolism 811

Pericardial Effusion and Cardiac Tamponade 811

Clinical Manifestations 812
 Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 812
 Medical Management 812

Cardiac Arrest 813

Clinical Manifestations 813
 Emergency Assessment and Management:
 Cardiopulmonary Resuscitation 813

26 Assessment and Management of Patients with Vascular Disorders and Problems of Peripheral Circulation 817

Anatomic and Physiologic Overview 818

Anatomy of the Vascular System 818
 Function of the Vascular System 819
 Pathophysiology of the Vascular System 821
 Gerontologic Considerations 821

Assessment of the Vascular System 822

Health History 822
 Physical Assessment 822

Diagnostic Evaluation 822

Doppler Ultrasound Flow Studies 822
 Exercise Testing 825
 Duplex Ultrasonography 825
 Computed Tomography Scanning 825
 Angiography 825
 Magnetic Resonance Angiography 826
 Contrast Phlebography (Venography) 826
 Lymphoscintigraphy 826

ARTERIAL DISORDERS 826

Arteriosclerosis and Atherosclerosis 826

Pathophysiology 826
 Risk Factors 827
 Prevention 828
 Clinical Manifestations 829
 Medical Management 829
 Nursing Management 829

Peripheral Artery Disease 833

Clinical Manifestations 835
 Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 835
 Medical Management 835
 Nursing Management 836

Nursing Care of the Postoperative Patient 836

Upper Extremity Arterial Disease 837

Clinical Manifestations 837
 Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 837
 Medical Management 837
 Nursing Management 837

Aortoiliac Disease 838

Medical Management 838
 Nursing Management 838

Aneurysms 838

Thoracic Aortic Aneurysm 839

Clinical Manifestations 839
 Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 839
 Medical Management 839

Abdominal Aortic Aneurysm 840

Pathophysiology 840
 Clinical Manifestations 840
 Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 840
 Gerontologic Considerations 840
 Medical Management 840
 Nursing Management 840

Other Aneurysms 841

Aortic Dissection 841

Pathophysiology 841
 Clinical Manifestations 842
 Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 842
 Medical Management 842
 Nursing Management 842

Arterial Embolism and Arterial Thrombosis 842

Pathophysiology 842
 Clinical Manifestations 842
 Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 842
 Medical Management 843
 Nursing Management 843

Raynaud's Phenomenon and Other

Acrosyndromes 844

Clinical Manifestations 844
 Medical Management 844
 Nursing Management 844

VENOUS DISORDERS 844

Venous Thromboembolism 845

COVID-19 Considerations 845
 Pathophysiology 845

Deep Vein Thrombosis 846

Pathophysiology 846
 Clinical Manifestations 846
 Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 846
 Prevention 847

- Medical Management 847
- Nursing Management 847
- Pulmonary Embolism 850**
 - Pathophysiology 850
 - Clinical Manifestations 850
 - Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 850
 - Medical Management 850
 - Nursing Management 852

Chronic Venous Insufficiency/Postthrombotic Syndrome 853

- Clinical Manifestations 853
- Complications 853
- Management 853

Leg Ulcers 854

- Pathophysiology 854
- Clinical Manifestations 854
- Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 855
- Medical Management 855

- *Nursing Process: The Patient with Leg Ulcers* 857

Varicose Veins 858

- Pathophysiology 858
- Clinical Manifestations 858
- Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 858
- Prevention and Medical Management 859
- Nursing Management 859

LYMPHATIC DISORDERS 860

Lymphangitis and Lymphadenitis 860

Lymphedema 860

- Medical Management 861
- Nursing Management 861

CELLULITIS 861

- Pathophysiology 861
- Clinical Manifestations 861
- Medical Management 861
- Nursing Management 861

27 Assessment and Management of Patients with Hypertension 865

Hypertension 866

- Pathophysiology 867
- Clinical Manifestations 868
- Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 869
- Medical Management 870

- *Nursing Process: The Patient with Hypertension* 877

Hypertensive Crises 879

- Hypertensive Emergency 880
- Hypertensive Urgency 880

UNIT 6 Hematologic Function 882

28 Assessment of Hematologic Function and Treatment Modalities 884

Anatomic and Physiologic Overview 885

- Bone Marrow 885
- Blood 885
- Reticuloendothelial System (RES) 890

- Hemostasis 890
- Gerontologic Considerations 891

Assessment 891

- Health History 891
- Physical Assessment 892

Diagnostic Evaluation 892

- Hematologic Studies 892
- Bone Marrow Aspiration and Biopsy 894

Therapeutic Approaches to Hematologic Disorders 895

- Splenectomy 895
- Therapeutic Apheresis 895
- Hematopoietic Stem Cell Transplantation 895
- Therapeutic Phlebotomy 896
- Blood Component Therapy 896

Procuring Blood and Blood Products 897

- Blood Donation 897
- Directed Donation 898
- Standard Donation 898
- Autologous Donation 898
- Intraoperative Blood Salvage 898
- Hemodilution 898
- Complications of Blood Donation 899
- Blood Processing 899

Transfusion 899

- Pretransfusion Assessment 900
- Patient Education 901
- Transfusion Procedures 901
- Complications 901
- Nursing Management of Transfusion Reactions 905
- Pharmacologic Alternatives to Blood Transfusions 906

29 Management of Patients with Nonmalignant Hematologic Disorders 909

ANEMIA 910

- Pathophysiology 910
- Clinical Manifestations 911
- Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 911
- Medical Management 911
- Gerontologic Considerations 911

- *Nursing Process: The Patient with Anemia* 912

Hypoproliferative Anemias 914

- Iron Deficiency Anemia 914
 - Clinical Manifestations 914
 - Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 914
 - Medical Management 914
 - Nursing Management 915

Anemias in Renal Disease 916

Anemia of Inflammation 916

Aplastic Anemia 916

- Pathophysiology 916
- Clinical Manifestations 916
- Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 916
- Medical Management 916
- Nursing Management 917

Megaloblastic Anemias 917

- Pathophysiology 917
- Clinical Manifestations 918

Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 918	Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 938
Medical Management 918	Management 939
Nursing Management 918	Acquired Bleeding Disorders 939
Hemolytic Anemias 919	Liver Disease 939
Sickle Cell Disease 919	Vitamin K Deficiency 939
Clinical Manifestations 919	Heparin-Induced Thrombocytopenia 939
Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 921	DISSEMINATED INTRAVASCULAR COAGULATION 940
Medical Management 921	Pathophysiology 940
• <i>Nursing Process: The Patient with Sickle Cell Crisis</i> 923	Clinical Manifestations 940
Thalassemias 925	Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 941
Glucose-6-Phosphate Dehydrogenase Deficiency 926	Medical Management 942
Clinical Manifestations 926	Nursing Management 942
Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 926	SECONDARY THROMBOCYTOSIS 942
Medical Management 926	THROMBOTIC DISORDERS 942
Nursing Management 926	Hyperhomocysteinemia 945
Immune Hemolytic Anemias 926	Antithrombin Deficiency 945
Clinical Manifestations 927	Protein C Deficiency 945
Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 927	Protein S Deficiency 945
Medical Management 927	Activated Protein C Resistance and Factor V
Nursing Management 927	Leiden Mutation 946
Hereditary Hemochromatosis 927	Antiphospholipid Antibody Syndrome 946
Clinical Manifestations 928	Malignancy 946
Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 928	Medical Management 946
Medical Management 928	Nursing Management 946
Nursing Management 928	
POLYCYTHEMIA 928	30 Management of Patients with Hematologic
Secondary Polycythemia 928	Neoplasms 950
Management 928	CLONAL STEM CELL DISORDERS 951
NEUTROPENIA 929	LEUKEMIA 951
Clinical Manifestations 929	Acute Myeloid Leukemia 951
Medical Management 930	Clinical Manifestations 953
Nursing Management 930	Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 953
LYMPHOPENIA 930	Medical Management 953
BLEEDING DISORDERS 930	Complications 954
Clinical Manifestations 931	Nursing Management 955
Medical Management 931	Chronic Myeloid Leukemia 955
Nursing Management 931	Clinical Manifestations 955
Thrombocytopenia 932	Medical Management 955
Clinical Manifestations 932	Nursing Management 956
Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 932	Acute Lymphocytic Leukemia 956
Medical Management 932	Clinical Manifestations 956
Nursing Management 933	Medical Management 957
Immune Thrombocytopenic Purpura 933	Nursing Management 957
Pathophysiology 933	Chronic Lymphocytic Leukemia 957
Clinical Manifestations 933	Veterans Considerations 957
Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 933	Pathophysiology 958
Medical Management 933	Clinical Manifestations 958
Nursing Management 934	Medical Management 959
Platelet Defects 934	Nursing Management 959
Clinical Manifestations 935	• <i>Nursing Process: The Patient with Acute Leukemia</i> 959
Medical Management 935	MYELODYSPLASTIC SYNDROMES (MDSs) 962
Nursing Management 935	Clinical Manifestations 963
Inherited Bleeding Disorders 936	Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 963
Hemophilia 936	Medical Management 963
Clinical Manifestations 936	Nursing Management 964
Medical Management 936	MYELOPROLIFERATIVE NEOPLASMS 965
Nursing Management 937	Polycythemia Vera 965
Gerontologic Considerations 937	Clinical Manifestations 965
von Willebrand Disease 938	Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 965
Clinical Manifestations 938	Complications 965

- Medical Management 965
- Nursing Management 966
- Essential Thrombocythemia 967**
 - Clinical Manifestations 967
 - Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 967
 - Complications 967
 - Medical Management 967
 - Nursing Management 968
- Primary Myelofibrosis 968**
 - Medical Management 968
 - Nursing Management 969

LYMPHOMA 969

- Hodgkin Lymphoma 969**
 - Pathophysiology 970
 - Clinical Manifestations 970
 - Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 971
 - Medical Management 971
 - Nursing Management 972
- Non-Hodgkin Lymphomas 972**
 - Clinical Manifestations 973
 - Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 973
 - Medical Management 973
 - Nursing Management 974

MULTIPLE MYELOMA 974

- Pathophysiology 974
- Clinical Manifestations 975
- Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 975
- Medical Management 976
- Complications 977
- Gerontologic Considerations 979
- Nursing Management 980


Immunologic Function 984**31 Assessment of Immune Function 986**

- Anatomic and Physiologic Overview 987**
 - Anatomy of the Immune System 987
 - Function of the Immune System 987
- Advances in Immunology 995**
 - Genetic Engineering 995
 - Stem Cells 995
 - Cancer and Immunotherapy 996
- Assessment of the Immune System 996**
 - Health History 996
 - Physical Assessment 1001
- Diagnostic Evaluation 1001**
 - Nursing Management 1001

32 Management of Patients with Immune Deficiency Disorders 1004**PRIMARY IMMUNE DEFICIENCIES DISEASES 1005**

- Pathophysiology 1005
- Clinical Manifestations 1005
- Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 1005
- Prevention 1005
- Medical Management 1005
- Nursing Management 1007

ACQUIRED IMMUNE DEFICIENCY 1007**HIV Infection and AIDS 1007**

- Epidemiology 1008
- HIV Transmission 1009
- Gerontologic Considerations 1009
- Prevention of HIV Infection 1009
- Reducing the Risk of Transmission to Health Care Providers 1011
- Pathophysiology 1012
- Stages of HIV Infection 1013
- Assessment and Diagnostic Findings in HIV Infection 1014
- Treatment of HIV Infection 1016
- Clinical Manifestations 1021
- Medical Management 1024
- Complementary, Alternative, and Integrative Health Therapies 1026
- Supportive Care 1026
- *Nursing Process: The Patient with HIV Infection* 1026

Emotional and Ethical Concerns 1034**33 Assessment and Management of Patients with Allergic Disorders 1038****Physiologic Overview 1039**

- Function of Immunoglobulins 1039
- Function of Antigens 1039
- Function of Chemical Mediators 1040
- Hypersensitivity 1041

Assessment 1042**Diagnostic Evaluation 1044**

- Complete Blood Count with Differential 1044
- Eosinophil Count 1044
- Total Serum Immunoglobulin E Levels 1044
- Skin Tests 1044
- Provocative Testing 1045
- Serum-Specific IgE Test 1045

ALLERGIC DISORDERS 1045**Anaphylaxis 1046**

- Pathophysiology 1046
- Clinical Manifestations 1046
- Prevention 1047
- Medical Management 1047
- Nursing Management 1047

Allergic Rhinitis 1049

- Pathophysiology 1049
- Clinical Manifestations 1049
- Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 1049
- Medical Management 1049

- *Nursing Process: The Patient with Allergic Rhinitis* 1054

Contact Dermatitis 1056

- Clinical Manifestations 1056
- Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 1056

Atopic Dermatitis 1057

- Medical Management 1057
- Nursing Management 1057

Drug Hypersensitivity 1057

- Pseudoallergic Drug Reactions 1059

Urticaria and Angioedema 1059**Hereditary Angioedema 1060**

- Clinical Manifestations 1060
- Medical Management 1060

Cold Urticaria 1060
 Clinical Manifestations 1060
 Medical Management 1060
 Nursing Management 1061

Food Allergy 1061
 Clinical Manifestations 1061
 Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 1061
 Medical Management 1061
 Nursing Management 1062

Latex Allergy 1062
 Clinical Manifestations 1062
 Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 1063
 Medical Management 1063
 Nursing Management 1064

34 Assessment and Management of Patients with Inflammatory Rheumatic Disorders 1067

Rheumatic Diseases 1067
 Pathophysiology 1068
 Clinical Manifestations 1069
 Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 1069
 Medical Management 1069
 Nursing Management 1074
 Gerontologic Considerations 1074

Diffuse Connective Tissue Diseases 1078

Rheumatoid Arthritis 1078
 Pathophysiology 1078
 Clinical Manifestations 1078
 Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 1079
 Medical Management 1079
 Nursing Management 1081

Systemic Lupus Erythematosus 1082
 Pathophysiology 1082
 Clinical Manifestations 1082
 Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 1083
 Medical Management 1084
 Nursing Management 1084

Primary Sjögren's Syndrome 1085
 Pathophysiology 1085
 Clinical Manifestations 1085
 Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 1085
 Medical Management 1085
 Nursing Management 1085

Scleroderma 1086
 Pathophysiology 1086
 Clinical Manifestations 1086
 Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 1086
 Medical Management 1086
 Nursing Management 1086

Polymyositis 1086
 Pathophysiology 1086
 Clinical Manifestations 1086
 Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 1087
 Medical Management 1087
 Nursing Management 1087

Polymyalgia Rheumatica and Giant Cell Arteritis 1087
 Pathophysiology 1087
 Clinical Manifestations 1087
 Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 1087
 Medical Management 1087
 Nursing Management 1088

Spondyloarthropathies 1088
 Ankylosing Spondylitis 1088
 Reactive Arthritis (Reiter's Syndrome) 1088
 Psoriatic Arthritis 1088
 Medical Management 1089
 Nursing Management 1089

Metabolic and Endocrine Diseases Associated with Rheumatic Disorders 1089
 Gout 1089
 Pathophysiology 1089
 Clinical Manifestations 1090
 Medical Management 1090
 Nursing Management 1091

Fibromyalgia 1091
 Pathophysiology 1091
 Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 1091
 Medical Management 1091
 Nursing Management 1091

Miscellaneous Disorders 1091

**UNIT
8**

Musculoskeletal Function 1094

35 Assessment of Musculoskeletal Function 1096

Anatomic and Physiologic Overview 1097
 Structure and Function of the Skeletal System 1097
 Structure and Function of the Articular System 1099
 Structure and Function of the Skeletal Muscle System 1100
 Gerontologic Considerations 1101

Assessment 1101
 Health History 1104
 Physical Assessment 1105

Diagnostic Evaluation 1108
 X-Ray Studies 1108
 Computed Tomography 1109
 Magnetic Resonance Imaging 1109
 Arthrography 1110
 Bone Densitometry 1110
 Bone Scan 1110
 Arthroscopy 1110
 Arthrocentesis 1111
 Electromyography 1111
 Biopsy 1111
 Laboratory Studies 1111

36 Management of Patients with Musculoskeletal Disorders 1113

Low Back Pain 1113
 Gerontologic Considerations 1114
 Pathophysiology 1114
 Clinical Manifestations 1114
 Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 1114
 Medical Management 1114
 Nursing Management 1115

Common Upper Extremity Disorders 1117

- Bursitis and Tendonitis 1117
- Loose Bodies 1117
- Impingement Syndrome 1117
- Carpal Tunnel Syndrome 1118
- Ganglion 1118
- Dupuytren Disease 1118
- Nursing Management of the Patient Undergoing Surgery of the Hand or Wrist 1119

Common Foot Problems 1119

- Callus 1120
- Corn 1120
- Hammer Toe 1120
- Onychocryptosis 1120
- Pes Cavus 1121
- Hallux Valgus 1121
- Morton Neuroma 1121
- Pes Planus 1121
- Plantar Fasciitis 1121
- Nursing Management of the Patient Undergoing Foot Surgery 1122

Osteoarthritis (Degenerative Joint Disease) 1122

- Pathophysiology 1122
- Clinical Manifestations 1123
- Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 1123
- Medical Management 1123
- Nursing Management 1124

The Patient Undergoing Arthroplasty 1124

- Preoperative and Intraoperative Nursing Management 1125
- Total Hip Arthroplasty 1126
 - Nursing Management 1126
- Total Knee Arthroplasty 1134
 - Nursing Management 1134

Metabolic Bone Disorders 1134

- Osteoporosis 1134
 - Prevention 1134
 - COVID-19 Considerations 1135
 - Gerontologic Considerations 1135
 - Pathophysiology 1135
 - Risk Factors 1136
 - Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 1137
 - Medical Management 1137

- *Nursing Process: The Patient with a Spontaneous Vertebral Fracture Related to Osteoporosis* 1139

Osteomalacia 1140

- Pathophysiology 1140
- Gerontologic Considerations 1140
- Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 1140
- Medical Management 1140

Paget Disease of the Bone 1141

- Pathophysiology 1141
- Clinical Manifestations 1141
- Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 1141
- Medical Management 1141
- Gerontologic Considerations 1141

Musculoskeletal Infections 1142

- Osteomyelitis 1142
 - Pathophysiology 1142
 - Clinical Manifestations 1142
 - Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 1142

- Prevention 1142
- Medical Management 1143

- *Nursing Process: The Patient with Osteomyelitis* 1143

Septic (Infectious) Arthritis 1145

- Clinical Manifestations 1145
- Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 1145
- Medical Management 1145
- Nursing Management 1145

Bone Tumors 1145

- Benign Bone Tumors 1145
- Malignant Bone Tumors 1146
 - Pathophysiology 1146
 - Clinical Manifestations 1146
 - Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 1146
 - Medical Management 1147
 - Nursing Management 1147

37 Management of Patients with Musculoskeletal Trauma 1152**Contusions, Strains, and Sprains 1153**

- Management 1153

Joint Dislocations 1154

- Medical Management 1154
- Nursing Management 1154

Injuries to the Tendons, Ligaments, and Menisci 1154

- Rotator Cuff Tears 1154
- Lateral and Medial Epicondylitis 1154
- Lateral and Medial Collateral Ligament Injury 1156
 - Medical Management 1156
 - Nursing Management 1156
- Cruciate Ligament Injury 1156
- Meniscal Injuries 1157
- Rupture of the Achilles Tendon 1157

Fractures 1157

- Types of Fractures 1157
- Clinical Manifestations 1159
- Emergency Management 1159
- Medical Management 1159
- Nursing Management 1160
- Fracture Healing and Complications 1161

The Patient with a Cast, Splint, or Brace 1166

- Casts 1166
- Splints and Braces 1167
 - Nursing Management 1168
 - Nursing Management of the Patient with an Immobilized Upper Extremity 1170
 - Nursing Management of the Patient with an Immobilized Lower Extremity 1171
 - Nursing Management of the Patient with a Body or Spica Cast 1171

The Patient with an External Fixator 1172

- Management 1172

The Patient in Traction 1173

- Principles of Effective Traction 1174
- Types of Traction 1174
 - Skin Traction 1175
 - Skeletal Traction 1176
 - Nursing Management of the Patient in Traction 1177

Fractures of Specific Sites 1178
 Clavicle 1178
 Humeral Neck 1179
 Humeral Shaft 1179
 Elbow 1180
 Proximal Radius 1180
 Radial and Ulnar Shafts 1181
 Wrist 1181
 Hand 1181
 Pelvis 1181
 Acetabulum 1183
 Hip 1183
 Clinical Manifestations 1184
 Gerontologic Considerations 1184
 Medical Management 1184
 Nursing Management 1185
 Femoral Shaft 1186
 Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 1191
 Management 1191
 Tibia and Fibula 1192
 Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 1192
 Management 1192
 Rib 1192
 Gerontologic Considerations 1192
 Thoracolumbar Spine 1193
Sports-Related Musculoskeletal Injuries 1193
 Management 1193
Occupation-Related Musculoskeletal Disorders 1193
 Occupation-Related Musculoskeletal Disorders
 in Nursing Personnel 1193
Amputation 1193
 Level of Amputation 1195
 Complications 1195
 Medical Management 1195
 Rehabilitation 1196
 • *Nursing Process: The Patient Undergoing an Amputation* 1196

Volume 2

UNIT 9 Digestive and Gastrointestinal Function 1206

38 Assessment of Digestive and Gastrointestinal Function 1208
 Anatomic and Physiologic Overview 1209
 Function of the Digestive System 1210
 Gerontologic Considerations 1212
 Assessment of the Gastrointestinal System 1212
 Health History 1213
 Physical Assessment 1215
 Diagnostic Evaluation 1216
 Serum Laboratory Studies 1217
 Stool Tests 1217
 Breath Tests 1217
 Abdominal Ultrasonography 1217
 Genetic Testing 1218

Imaging Studies 1219
 Endoscopic Procedures 1221
 Manometry and Electrophysiologic Studies 1224
 Gastric Analysis, Gastric Acid Stimulation Test,
 and pH Monitoring 1225
 Laparoscopy (Peritoneoscopy) 1225

39 Management of Patients with Oral and Esophageal Disorders 1228

DISORDERS OF THE ORAL CAVITY 1229
 Dental Plaque and Caries 1229
 Prevention 1232
 Dental Health and Disease 1232
Periapical Abscess 1233
 Clinical Manifestations 1233
 Medical Management 1233
 Nursing Management 1233
DISORDERS OF THE JAW 1233
Temporomandibular Disorders 1233
 Clinical Manifestations 1233
 Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 1233
 Medical Management 1233
Jaw Disorders Requiring Surgical Management 1234
 Nursing Management 1234
DISORDERS OF THE SALIVARY GLANDS 1234
 Parotitis 1234
 Sialadenitis 1234
 Salivary Calculus (Sialolithiasis) 1235
 Neoplasms 1235
CANCER OF THE ORAL CAVITY AND PHARYNX 1235
 Pathophysiology 1235
 Clinical Manifestations 1235
 Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 1236
 Human Papillomavirus Prevention 1236
 Medical Management 1236
 Nursing Management 1236
NURSING MANAGEMENT OF THE PATIENT WITH DISORDERS OF THE ORAL CAVITY 1236
 Promoting Mouth Care 1236
 Ensuring Adequate Food and Fluid Intake 1237
 Supporting a Positive Self-Image 1237
 Minimizing Pain and Discomfort 1237
 Preventing Infection 1237
 Promoting Home, Community-Based, and
 Transitional Care 1237
NECK DISSECTION 1238
 • *Nursing Process: The Patient Undergoing a Neck
 Dissection* 1239
DELIVERING NUTRITION ENTERALLY 1244
 Nursing Management 1244
Gastrostomy and Jejunostomy 1249
 • *Nursing Process: The Patient with a Gastrostomy or
 Jejunostomy* 1250
DISORDERS OF THE ESOPHAGUS 1252
Achalasia 1253
 Clinical Manifestations 1253
 Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 1253
 Management 1253
Esophageal Spasm 1253
 Clinical Manifestations 1254

Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 1254
Management 1254

Hiatal Hernia 1254

Clinical Manifestations 1254
Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 1254
Management 1254

Diverticulum 1255

Clinical Manifestations 1255
Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 1255
Management 1255

Perforation 1255

Clinical Manifestations 1256
Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 1256
Management 1256

Foreign Bodies 1256

Chemical Burns 1256

Gastroesophageal Reflux Disease 1257

Clinical Manifestations 1257
Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 1257
Management 1257

Barrett Esophagus 1257

Clinical Manifestations 1257
Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 1257
Management 1257

Benign Tumors of the Esophagus 1257

- *Nursing Process: The Patient with a Noncancerous Disorder of the Esophagus* 1258

Cancer of the Esophagus 1260

Pathophysiology 1260
Clinical Manifestations 1260
Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 1261
Medical Management 1261
Nursing Management 1261

40 Management of Patients with Gastric and Duodenal Disorders 1266

Gastritis 1267

Pathophysiology 1267
Clinical Manifestations 1268
Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 1268
Medical Management 1268
Nursing Management 1268

Peptic Ulcer Disease 1270

Pathophysiology 1271
Clinical Manifestations 1272
Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 1272
Medical Management 1272

- *Nursing Process: The Patient with Peptic Ulcer Disease* 1275

Gastric Cancer 1277

Pathophysiology 1278
Clinical Manifestations 1278
Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 1278
Medical Management 1278
Gerontologic Considerations 1280

- *Nursing Process: The Patient with Gastric Cancer* 1280

Tumors of the Small Intestine 1283

Clinical Manifestations 1283
Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 1283
Management 1283

41 Management of Patients with Intestinal and Rectal Disorders 1286

ABNORMALITIES OF FECAL ELIMINATION 1287

Constipation 1287

Pathophysiology 1287
Clinical Manifestations 1288
Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 1288
Complications 1288
Gerontologic Considerations 1288
Medical Management 1289
Nursing Management 1289

Diarrhea 1289

Pathophysiology 1290
Clinical Manifestations 1291
Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 1291
Complications 1291
Gerontologic Considerations 1291
Medical Management 1291
Nursing Management 1291

Fecal Incontinence 1292

Pathophysiology 1292
Clinical Manifestations 1292
Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 1292
Medical Management 1292
Nursing Management 1292

Irritable Bowel Syndrome (IBS) 1293

Pathophysiology 1293
Clinical Manifestations 1293
Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 1293
Medical Management 1294
Nursing Management 1295

DISORDERS OF MALABSORPTION 1295

Celiac Disease 1295

Pathophysiology 1295
Clinical Manifestations 1296
Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 1296
Medical Management 1297
Nursing Management 1297

ACUTE ABDOMEN 1297

Peritonitis 1297

Pathophysiology 1298
Clinical Manifestations 1298
Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 1298
Medical Management 1298
Nursing Management 1298

Appendicitis 1298

Pathophysiology 1299
Clinical Manifestations 1299
Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 1299
Complications 1299
Gerontologic Considerations 1299
Medical Management 1299
Nursing Management 1300

Diverticular Disease 1300

Pathophysiology 1300
Clinical Manifestations 1301
Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 1301
Gerontologic Considerations 1301
Medical Management 1301
Nursing Management 1302

Intestinal Obstruction 1302
 Small Bowel Obstruction 1303
 Pathophysiology 1303
 Clinical Manifestations 1303
 Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 1304
 Medical Management 1304
 Nursing Management 1304
 Large Bowel Obstruction 1304
 Pathophysiology 1304
 Clinical Manifestations 1304
 Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 1305
 Medical Management 1305
 Nursing Management 1305

INFLAMMATORY BOWEL DISEASE 1305
 Crohn's Disease (Regional Enteritis) 1305
 Pathophysiology 1305
 Clinical Manifestations 1306
 Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 1307
 Complications 1307
 Ulcerative Colitis 1307
 Pathophysiology 1307
 Clinical Manifestations 1307
 Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 1307
 Complications 1307
 Management of Inflammatory Bowel Disease 1308
 Medical Management 1308

- *Nursing Process: Management of the Patient with Inflammatory Bowel Disease* 1310

DELIVERING NUTRITION PARENTERALLY 1313
 Nursing Management 1313

- *Nursing Process: The Patient Receiving Parenteral Nutrition* 1316

MANAGEMENT OF THE PATIENT REQUIRING AN OSTOMY 1318
 Preoperative Nursing Management 1321
 Postoperative Nursing Management 1321

COLORECTAL NEOPLASMS 1324
 Colorectal Cancer 1324
 Pathophysiology 1325
 Clinical Manifestations 1326
 Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 1326
 Complications 1326
 Gerontologic Considerations 1326
 Prevention 1327
 Medical Management 1327

- *Nursing Process: The Patient Having Surgery for Colorectal Cancer* 1330

Polyps of the Colon and Rectum 1333

DISORDERS OF THE ANORECTUM 1333
 Proctitis 1333
 Anorectal Abscess 1334
 Anal Fistula 1334
 Anal Fissure 1334
 Hemorrhoids 1335
 Pilonidal Sinus or Cyst 1335
 Nursing Management of Patients with Anorectal Disorders 1336

UNIT 10 Metabolic and Endocrine Function 1340

42 Assessment and Management of Patients with Obesity 1342
Obesity 1342
 Epidemiology of Obesity 1343
 Obesity Risks 1343
 Pathophysiology 1344
 Assessment of Obesity 1345
 Diagnostic Evaluation 1347
 Medical Management 1347
 Gerontologic Considerations 1351
 Veterans Considerations 1351
 COVID-19 Considerations 1352
 Nursing Management 1352

The Patient Undergoing Bariatric Surgery 1354
 Surgical Procedures 1354

- *Nursing Process: The Patient Undergoing Bariatric Surgery* 1355

43 Assessment and Management of Patients with Hepatic Disorders 1364
ASSESSMENT OF THE LIVER 1365
Anatomic and Physiologic Overview 1365
 Anatomy of the Liver 1365
 Functions of the Liver 1366
 Gerontologic Considerations 1367

Assessment 1367
 Health History 1367
 Physical Assessment 1368

Diagnostic Evaluation 1369
 Liver Function Tests 1369
 Liver Biopsy 1369
 Other Diagnostic Tests 1370

MANIFESTATIONS OF HEPATIC DYSFUNCTION 1371
Jaundice 1371
 Hemolytic Jaundice 1371
 Hepatocellular Jaundice 1371
 Obstructive Jaundice 1371
 Hereditary Hyperbilirubinemia 1372

Portal Hypertension 1372
Ascites 1372
 Pathophysiology 1372
 Clinical Manifestations 1373
 Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 1373
 Medical Management 1373
 Nursing Management 1374

Esophageal Varices 1375
 Pathophysiology 1375
 Clinical Manifestations 1376
 Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 1376
 Medical Management 1377
 Surgical Management 1379
 Nursing Management 1380

Hepatic Encephalopathy and Coma 1380
 Pathophysiology 1381
 Clinical Manifestations 1381
 Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 1382

- Medical Management 1382
- Nursing Management 1383
- Other Manifestations of Hepatic Dysfunction 1384**
 - Edema and Bleeding 1384
 - Vitamin Deficiency 1384
 - Metabolic Abnormalities 1384
 - Pruritus and Other Skin Changes 1384

VIRAL HEPATITIS 1384

- Hepatitis A Virus 1385**
 - Clinical Manifestations 1386
 - Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 1386
 - Prevention 1386
 - Medical Management 1386
 - Nursing Management 1387
- Hepatitis B Virus 1387**
 - Gerontologic Considerations 1388
 - Clinical Manifestations 1388
 - Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 1388
 - Prevention 1388
 - Medical Management 1389
 - Nursing Management 1390
- Hepatitis C Virus 1390**
- Hepatitis D Virus 1391**
- Hepatitis E Virus 1391**
- Hepatitis G Virus and GB Virus-C 1391**

NONVIRAL HEPATITIS 1391

- Toxic Hepatitis 1392
- Drug-Induced Hepatitis 1392

ACUTE LIVER FAILURE 1392**HEPATIC CIRRHOSIS 1393**

- Pathophysiology 1393
- Clinical Manifestations 1393
- Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 1395
- Medical Management 1395
- Nursing Management 1395

CANCER OF THE LIVER 1404

- Primary Liver Tumors 1404**
- Liver Metastases 1405**
 - Clinical Manifestations 1405
 - Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 1405
 - Medical Management 1405
 - Surgical Management 1406
 - Nursing Management 1407

LIVER TRANSPLANTATION 1407

- Surgical Procedure 1408**
 - Complications 1409
 - Nursing Management 1410

LIVER ABSCESSSES 1412

- Pathophysiology 1412
- Clinical Manifestations 1413
- Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 1413
- Medical Management 1413
- Nursing Management 1413

44 Management of Patients with Biliary Disorders 1416**ANATOMIC AND PHYSIOLOGIC OVERVIEW 1417**

- The Gallbladder 1417
- The Pancreas 1417
 - The Exocrine Pancreas 1417

- The Endocrine Pancreas 1417
- Endocrine Control of Carbohydrate Metabolism 1418
- Gerontologic Considerations 1418

DISORDERS OF THE GALLBLADDER 1418

- Cholecystitis 1418**
- Cholelithiasis 1418**
 - Pathophysiology 1419
 - Clinical Manifestations 1420
 - Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 1420
 - Medical Management 1422
- *Nursing Process: The Patient Undergoing Surgery for Gallbladder Disease 1426*

DISORDERS OF THE PANCREAS 1429

- Acute Pancreatitis 1429**
 - Gerontologic Considerations 1429
 - Pathophysiology 1429
 - Clinical Manifestations 1430
 - Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 1430
 - Medical Management 1431
 - Nursing Management 1432
- Chronic Pancreatitis 1433**
 - Clinical Manifestations 1436
 - Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 1437
 - Medical Management 1437

Pancreatic Cysts 1438

- Cancer of the Pancreas 1438**
 - Clinical Manifestations 1439
 - Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 1439
 - Medical Management 1439
 - Nursing Management 1440

Tumors of the Head of the Pancreas 1440

- Clinical Manifestations 1441
- Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 1441
- Medical Management 1441
- Nursing Management 1441

Pancreatic Islet Tumors 1442

- Surgical Management 1442
- Nursing Management 1442

Hyperinsulinism 1442**Ulcerogenic Tumors 1442****45 Assessment and Management of Patients with Endocrine Disorders 1445****ASSESSMENT OF THE ENDOCRINE SYSTEM 1446**

- Anatomic and Physiologic Overview 1446**
 - Glands of the Endocrine System 1446
 - Function and Regulation of Hormones 1446
 - Classification and Action of Hormones 1446
- Assessment 1447**
 - Health History 1447
 - Physical Assessment 1447
- Diagnostic Evaluation 1448**
 - Blood Tests 1448
 - Urine Tests 1448
 - Additional Diagnostic Studies 1448

THE PITUITARY GLAND 1449

- Anatomic and Physiologic Overview 1449**
 - Anterior Pituitary 1449
 - Posterior Pituitary 1450

Pathophysiology 1450	Adrenal Medulla 1474
Anterior Pituitary 1450	Adrenal Cortex 1474
Posterior Pituitary 1450	Pheochromocytoma 1474
Pituitary Tumors 1450	Clinical Manifestations 1475
Clinical Manifestations 1450	Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 1475
Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 1451	Medical Management 1476
Medical Management 1451	Nursing Management 1476
Diabetes Insipidus 1451	Adrenocortical Insufficiency (Addison's Disease) 1477
Clinical Manifestations 1451	Clinical Manifestations 1477
Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 1451	Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 1477
Medical Management 1452	Medical Management 1477
Nursing Management 1452	Nursing Management 1477
Syndrome of Inappropriate Antidiuretic Hormone Secretion 1452	Cushing's Syndrome 1479
Medical Management 1452	Clinical Manifestations 1479
Nursing Management 1452	Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 1479
THE THYROID GLAND 1452	Medical Management 1480
Anatomic and Physiologic Overview 1452	• <i>Nursing Process: The Patient with Cushing's Syndrome</i> 1480
Thyroid Hormone 1453	Primary Aldosteronism 1482
Calcitonin 1453	Clinical Manifestations 1482
Pathophysiology 1453	Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 1483
Assessment 1453	Medical Management 1483
Physical Examination 1453	Nursing Management 1483
Diagnostic Evaluation 1454	Corticosteroid Therapy 1483
Thyroid Tests 1454	Side Effects 1483
Nursing Implications 1455	Therapeutic Uses of Corticosteroids 1483
Hypothyroidism 1455	Dosage 1484
Clinical Manifestations 1456	Tapering 1484
Medical Management 1457	Nursing Management 1484
Nursing Management 1457	
Gerontologic Considerations 1461	
Hyperthyroidism 1461	46 Management of Patients with Diabetes 1487
Clinical Manifestations 1461	DIABETES 1488
Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 1462	Epidemiology 1488
Medical Management 1462	Classification 1488
Gerontologic Considerations 1464	COVID-19 Considerations 1489
• <i>Nursing Process: The Patient with Hyperthyroidism</i> 1465	Pathophysiology 1489
Thyroid Tumors 1467	Prevention 1491
Endemic (Iodine-Deficient) Goiter 1467	Clinical Manifestations 1491
Nodular Goiter 1467	Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 1492
Thyroid Cancer 1467	Gerontologic Considerations 1492
Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 1468	Medical Management 1492
Medical Management 1468	Nursing Management 1504
Nursing Management 1469	ACUTE COMPLICATIONS OF DIABETES 1512
THE PARATHYROID GLANDS 1470	Hypoglycemia (Insulin Reactions) 1512
Anatomic and Physiologic Overview 1470	Gerontologic Considerations 1512
Pathophysiology 1470	Clinical Manifestations 1512
Hyperparathyroidism 1470	Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 1512
Clinical Manifestations 1470	Management 1513
Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 1471	Diabetic Ketoacidosis 1514
Medical Management 1471	Pathophysiology 1514
Nursing Management 1471	Prevention 1514
Complications: Hypercalcemic Crisis 1472	Clinical Manifestations 1515
Hypoparathyroidism 1472	Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 1515
Clinical Manifestations 1472	Management 1515
Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 1473	Hyperglycemic Hyperosmolar Syndrome 1516
Medical Management 1473	Clinical Manifestations 1517
Nursing Management 1473	Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 1517
THE ADRENAL GLANDS 1474	Management 1517
Anatomic and Physiologic Overview 1474	• <i>Nursing Process: The Patient with Diabetic Ketoacidosis or Hyperglycemic Hyperosmolar Syndrome</i> 1517

LONG-TERM COMPLICATIONS OF DIABETES 1519	
Macrovascular Complications 1519	
Role of Diabetes in Macrovascular Diseases 1519	
Management 1520	
Microvascular Complications 1520	
Diabetic Retinopathy 1520	
Clinical Manifestations 1521	
Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 1521	
Medical Management 1521	
Nursing Management 1521	
Nephropathy 1522	
Clinical Manifestations 1522	
Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 1522	
Management 1523	
Diabetic Neuropathies 1523	
Peripheral Neuropathy 1523	
Clinical Manifestations 1523	
Management 1524	
Autonomic Neuropathies 1524	
Clinical Manifestations 1524	
Management 1525	
Foot and Leg Problems 1525	
Medical Management 1526	
Nursing Management 1526	
SPECIAL ISSUES IN DIABETES CARE 1526	
Patients with Diabetes Who Are Undergoing Surgery 1526	
Management of Patients with Diabetes Who Are Hospitalized 1526	
Self-Care Issues 1528	
Hyperglycemia During Hospitalization 1528	
Hypoglycemia During Hospitalization 1528	
Common Alterations in Diet 1528	
Hygiene 1529	
Stress 1529	
Gerontologic Considerations 1530	
Nursing Management 1530	

Kidney and Urinary Tract Function 1532

47 Assessment of Kidney and Urinary Function 1534	
Anatomic and Physiologic Overview 1535	
Anatomy of the Kidney and Urinary Systems 1535	
Physiology of the Kidney and Urinary Systems 1537	
Gerontologic Considerations 1540	
Assessment of the Kidney and Urinary Systems 1541	
Health History 1541	
Physical Assessment 1543	
Diagnostic Evaluation 1546	
Urinalysis and Urine Culture 1546	
Specific Gravity 1548	
Osmolality 1548	
Renal Function Tests 1549	
Diagnostic Imaging 1549	
Urologic Endoscopic Procedures 1551	
Biopsy 1552	
48 Management of Patients with Kidney Disorders 1554	
FLUID AND ELECTROLYTE IMBALANCES IN KIDNEY DISORDERS 1555	
Clinical Manifestations 1555	
Gerontologic Considerations 1555	
KIDNEY DISORDERS 1555	
Chronic Kidney Disease 1555	
Pathophysiology 1556	
Stages of Chronic Kidney Disease 1556	
Clinical Manifestations 1557	
Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 1557	
Medical Management 1557	
Gerontologic Considerations 1557	
Nephrosclerosis 1557	
Pathophysiology 1557	
Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 1558	
Medical Management 1558	
Primary Glomerular Diseases 1558	
Acute Nephritic Syndrome 1558	
Pathophysiology 1558	
Clinical Manifestations 1559	
Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 1559	
Complications 1559	
Medical Management 1559	
Nursing Management 1559	
Chronic Glomerulonephritis 1560	
Pathophysiology 1560	
Clinical Manifestations 1560	
Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 1560	
Medical Management 1560	
Nursing Management 1560	
Nephrotic Syndrome 1561	
Pathophysiology 1561	
Clinical Manifestations 1561	
Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 1561	
Complications 1562	
Medical Management 1562	
Nursing Management 1562	
Polycystic Kidney Disease 1562	
Pathophysiology 1562	
Clinical Manifestations 1562	
Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 1562	
Medical Management 1562	
RENAL CANCER 1562	
Clinical Manifestations 1563	
Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 1563	
Medical Management 1563	
Nursing Management 1564	
KIDNEY DISEASE 1564	
Acute Kidney Injury 1564	
COVID-19 Considerations 1564	
Pathophysiology 1565	
Classifications of Acute Kidney Injury 1565	
Categories of Acute Kidney Injury 1565	
Phases of Acute Kidney Injury 1565	
Clinical Manifestations 1566	

- Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 1567
- Prevention 1567
- Gerontologic Considerations 1568
- Medical Management 1568
- Nursing Management 1569
- End-Stage Kidney Disease or Chronic Kidney Disease 1570**
 - Pathophysiology 1570
 - Clinical Manifestations 1570
 - Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 1570
 - Complications 1571
 - Medical Management 1571
 - Nursing Management 1572
 - Gerontologic Considerations 1577
- RENAL REPLACEMENT THERAPY (RRT) 1577**
 - Dialysis 1577**
 - Hemodialysis (HD) 1577
 - Dialyzers 1578
 - Vascular Access 1579
 - Complications 1580
 - COVID-19 Considerations 1580
 - Nursing Management 1580
 - Continuous Renal Replacement Therapy 1583
 - Continuous Venovenous Hemofiltration 1584
 - Continuous Venovenous Hemodialysis 1584
 - Peritoneal Dialysis (PD) 1584
 - Procedure 1585
 - Complications 1587
 - Approaches 1587
 - Nursing Management 1588
 - Special Considerations: Nursing Management of the Patient on Dialysis Who Is Hospitalized 1590
 - KIDNEY SURGERY 1591**
 - Management of Patients Undergoing Kidney Surgery 1591**
 - Preoperative Considerations 1591
 - Perioperative Concerns 1592
 - Postoperative Management 1592
 - Nursing Management 1592
 - Kidney Transplantation 1596**
 - Preoperative Management 1596
 - Medical Management 1596
 - Nursing Management 1597
 - Postoperative Management 1597
 - Medical Management 1598
 - COVID-19 Considerations 1598
 - Nursing Management 1599
 - RENAL TRAUMA 1600**
 - Medical Management 1601
 - Nursing Management 1601
- 49 Management of Patients with Urinary Disorders 1604**
 - INFECTIONS OF THE URINARY TRACT 1605**
 - Lower Urinary Tract Infections 1605**
 - Pathophysiology 1605
 - Clinical Manifestations 1606
 - Gerontologic Considerations 1606
 - Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 1607
 - Medical Management 1607
 - *Nursing Process: The Patient with a Lower Urinary Tract Infection* 1608
 - Upper Urinary Tract Infections 1610**
 - Acute Pyelonephritis 1610**
 - Clinical Manifestations 1610
 - Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 1610
 - Medical Management 1610
 - Chronic Pyelonephritis 1610**
 - Clinical Manifestations 1610
 - Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 1611
 - Complications 1611
 - Medical Management 1611
 - Nursing Management 1611
 - ADULT VOIDING DYSFUNCTION 1611**
 - Urinary Incontinence 1611**
 - Types of Urinary Incontinence 1612
 - Gerontologic Considerations 1612
 - Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 1613
 - Medical Management 1613
 - Nursing Management 1614
 - Urinary Retention 1616**
 - Pathophysiology 1616
 - Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 1616
 - Complications 1616
 - Nursing Management 1616
 - Neurogenic Bladder 1617**
 - Pathophysiology 1617
 - Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 1617
 - Complications 1617
 - Medical Management 1617
 - Urinary Catheters 1617**
 - Indwelling Catheters 1617
 - Suprapubic Catheters 1618
 - Nursing Management 1618
 - UROLITHIASIS AND NEPHROLITHIASIS 1620**
 - Pathophysiology 1620
 - Clinical Manifestations 1621
 - Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 1621
 - Medical Management 1621
 - *Nursing Process: The Patient with Renal Calculi* 1624
 - GENITOURINARY TRAUMA 1625**
 - Specific Injuries 1625**
 - Ureteral Trauma 1625
 - Bladder Trauma 1625
 - Urethral Trauma 1626
 - Medical Management 1626
 - Nursing Management 1626
 - URINARY TRACT CANCERS 1626**
 - Cancer of the Bladder 1626**
 - Clinical Manifestations 1626
 - Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 1626
 - Medical Management 1627
 - URINARY DIVERSIONS 1627**
 - Ileal Conduit 1628**
 - Complications 1628
 - Nursing Management 1628
 - Orthotopic Neobladder 1630**
 - Surgical Management 1631
 - Complications 1631
 - Nursing Management 1631

Other Continent Urinary Diversion
Procedures 1632

- *Nursing Process: The Patient Undergoing Urinary Diversion Surgery* 1632

UNIT
12 **Reproductive Function 1638**

50 **Assessment and Management of Patients with
Female Physiologic Processes 1640**

CHALLENGES IN WOMEN'S HEALTH 1641

ASSESSMENT OF THE FEMALE REPRODUCTIVE SYSTEM 1641

Anatomic and Physiologic Overview 1641

Anatomy of the Female Reproductive
System 1641

Function of the Female Reproductive System 1643

Assessment 1645

Health History 1645

Physical Assessment 1650

Diagnostic Evaluation 1652

Cytologic Test for Cancer (Pap Smear) 1652

Colposcopy and Cervical Biopsy 1653

Cryotherapy and Laser Therapy 1653

Cone Biopsy and Loop Electrosurgical Excision
Procedure 1653

Endometrial (Aspiration) Biopsy 1653

Dilation and Curettage 1653

Endoscopic Examinations 1653

Other Diagnostic Procedures 1655

MANAGEMENT OF FEMALE PHYSIOLOGIC PROCESSES 1655

Menstruation 1655

Psychosocial Considerations 1655

Cultural Considerations 1656

Menstrual Disorders 1656

Premenstrual Syndrome 1656

Clinical Manifestations 1656

Medical Management 1656

Nursing Management 1657

Dysmenorrhea 1657

Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 1657

Management 1657

Amenorrhea 1657

Abnormal Uterine Bleeding 1658

Dyspareunia 1658

Contraception 1658

Contraindications 1658

Abstinence 1660

Long-Acting Reversible Contraceptive (LARC) Methods 1660

Sterilization 1660

Hormonal Contraception 1660

Mechanical Barriers 1662

Coitus Interruptus or Withdrawal 1663

Fertility Awareness–Based Methods 1663

Emergency Contraception 1663

Nursing Management 1664

Abortion 1664

Spontaneous Abortion 1664

Habitual Abortion 1664

Medical Management 1664

Nursing Management 1665

Induced Abortion 1665

Medical Management 1665

Nursing Management 1666

Infertility 1666

Diagnostic Findings 1666

Medical Management 1667

Nursing Management 1668

Preconception/Periconception Health Care 1668

Ectopic Pregnancy 1669

Clinical Manifestations 1669

Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 1669

Medical Management 1670

- *Nursing Process: The Patient with an Ectopic Pregnancy* 1670

Perimenopause 1671

Nursing Management 1671

Menopause 1671

Postmenopausal Bleeding 1671

Clinical Manifestations 1671

Psychological Considerations 1672

Medical Management 1672

Nursing Management 1673

51 **Management of Patients with Female
Reproductive Disorders 1676**

VULVOVAGINAL INFECTIONS 1677

Candidiasis 1677

Clinical Manifestations 1677

Medical Management 1678

Bacterial Vaginosis 1678

Clinical Manifestations 1679

Medical Management 1679

Trichomoniasis 1679

Clinical Manifestations 1679

Medical Management 1679

Gerontologic Considerations 1679

- *Nursing Process: The Patient with a Vulvovaginal Infection* 1679

Human Papillomavirus 1681

Pathophysiology 1681

Medical Management 1681

Prevention 1681

**Herpes Virus Type 2 Infection (Herpes Genitalis,
Herpes Simplex Virus) 1682**

Pathophysiology 1682

Clinical Manifestations 1682

Medical Management 1682

- *Nursing Process: The Patient with a Genital Herpes Infection* 1682

Endocervicitis and Cervicitis 1684

Chlamydia and Gonorrhea 1684

Medical Management 1684

Nursing Management 1684

Pelvic Inflammatory Disease 1684

Pathophysiology 1685

Clinical Manifestations 1685

Complications 1685

Medical Management 1685
 Nursing Management 1686
Human Immune Deficiency Virus Infection and Acquired Immune Deficiency Syndrome 1686
STRUCTURAL DISORDERS 1686
Fistulas of the Vagina 1686
 Clinical Manifestations 1687
 Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 1687
 Medical Management 1687
Pelvic Organ Prolapse: Cystocele, Rectocele, Enterocele 1687
 Clinical Manifestations 1688
 Medical Management 1688
Uterine Prolapse 1688
 Medical Management 1690
 Nursing Management 1690
BENIGN DISORDERS 1691
Vulvitis and Vulvodynia 1691
 Medical Management 1691
Vulvar Cysts 1691
 Medical Management 1691
Vulvar Dystrophy 1691
 Medical Management 1691
 Nursing Management 1691
Ovarian Cysts 1692
 Medical Management 1692
Benign Tumors of the Uterus: Fibroids (Leiomyomas, Myomas) 1692
 Clinical Manifestations 1692
 Medical Management 1693
Endometriosis 1693
 Pathophysiology 1693
 Clinical Manifestations 1693
 Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 1693
 Medical Management 1694
 Nursing Management 1694
Chronic Pelvic Pain 1694
Adenomyosis 1694
Endometrial Hyperplasia 1695
MALIGNANT CONDITIONS 1695
Cancer of the Cervix 1695
 Clinical Manifestations 1695
 Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 1696
 Medical Management 1696
Cancer of the Uterus (Endometrium) 1697
 Pathophysiology 1697
 Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 1697
 Medical Management 1697
Cancer of the Vulva 1698
 Clinical Manifestations 1698
 Medical Management 1698
 Nursing Management 1698
Cancer of the Vagina 1700
 Medical Management 1700
Cancer of the Fallopian Tubes 1700
Cancer of the Ovary 1700
 Epidemiology 1700
 Pathophysiology 1701
 Clinical Manifestations 1701
 Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 1701

Medical Management 1701
 Nursing Management 1702
Hysterectomy 1702
 Preoperative Management 1702
 Postoperative Management 1702
 • *Nursing Process: The Patient Undergoing a Hysterectomy 1702*
Radiation Therapy 1705
 Methods of Radiation Therapy 1705
 Nursing Considerations for Radiation Safety 1705

52 Assessment and Management of Patients with Breast Disorders 1708

BREAST ASSESSMENT 1709
Anatomic and Physiologic Overview 1709
Assessment 1709
 Health History 1709
 Physical Assessment: Female Breast 1709
 Physical Assessment: Male Breast 1712
Diagnostic Evaluation 1712
 Breast Self-Examination 1712
 Mammography 1713
 Contrast Mammography 1713
 Ultrasonography 1713
 Magnetic Resonance Imaging 1715
 Procedures for Tissue Analysis 1715
CONDITIONS AFFECTING THE NIPPLE 1717
Nipple Discharge 1717
 Fissure 1717
BREAST INFECTIONS 1717
Mastitis 1717
 Lactational Abscess 1717
BENIGN CONDITIONS OF THE BREAST 1718
Breast Pain 1718
 Nursing Management 1718
Cysts 1718
Fibroadenomas 1719
Benign Proliferative Breast Disease 1719
 Atypical Hyperplasia 1719
 Lobular Carcinoma In Situ 1719
Other Benign Conditions 1719
MALIGNANT CONDITIONS OF THE BREAST 1719
Types of Breast Cancer 1719
Ductal Carcinoma In Situ 1719
 Medical Management 1719
Invasive Cancer 1720
 Risk Factors 1720
 Protective Factors 1720
 Breast Cancer Prevention Strategies in the Patient Who Is at High Risk 1721
 Clinical Manifestations 1722
 Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 1722
 Staging 1722
 Prognosis 1722
 Surgical Management 1723
 Nursing Management 1723
 • *Nursing Process: The Patient Undergoing Surgery for Breast Cancer 1725*

- Radiation Therapy 1730
 - Side Effects 1731
 - Nursing Management 1731
- Systemic Treatments 1731
 - Chemotherapy 1731
 - Side Effects 1732
 - Nursing Management 1732
 - Hormonal Therapy 1733
 - Targeted Therapy 1734
- Treatment of Recurrent and Metastatic Breast Cancer 1735
 - Nursing Management 1735
- Reconstructive Procedures After Mastectomy 1735
 - Tissue Expander Followed by Permanent Implant 1735
- Tissue Transfer Procedures 1736
 - Nipple–Areola Reconstruction 1737
- Prosthetics 1737
- Special Issues in Breast Cancer Management 1737
 - Implications of Genetic Testing 1737
 - Pregnancy and Breast Cancer 1737
 - Quality of Life and Survivorship 1738
 - Gerontologic Considerations 1738
 - Breast Health of Women with Disability 1738

RECONSTRUCTIVE BREAST SURGERY 1739

- Reduction Mammoplasty 1739
- Augmentation Mammoplasty 1739
- Mastopexy 1739

DISEASES OF THE MALE BREAST 1739

- Gynecomastia 1739
- Male Breast Cancer 1740

53 Assessment and Management of Patients with Male Reproductive Disorders 1743

ASSESSMENT OF THE MALE REPRODUCTIVE SYSTEM 1744

- Anatomic and Physiologic Overview 1744
 - Gerontologic Considerations 1745
- Assessment 1745
 - Health History 1745
 - Physical Assessment 1746
- Diagnostic Evaluation 1747
 - Prostate-Specific Antigen Test 1747
 - Ultrasonography 1747
 - Prostate Fluid or Tissue Analysis 1747
 - Tests of Male Sexual Function 1747

DISORDERS OF MALE SEXUAL FUNCTION 1747

- Erectile Dysfunction 1747
 - Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 1747
 - Medical Management 1748
 - Nursing Management 1751
- Disorders of Ejaculation 1751

INFECTIONS OF THE MALE GENITOURINARY TRACT 1752

PROSTATIC DISORDERS 1752

- Prostatitis 1752
 - Clinical Manifestations 1753
 - Medical Management 1753
 - Nursing Management 1753
- Benign Prostatic Hyperplasia (Enlarged Prostate) 1753
 - Pathophysiology 1753
 - Clinical Manifestations 1754

- Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 1754
- Medical Management 1754

Cancer of the Prostate 1755

- Clinical Manifestations 1755
- Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 1755
- Medical Management 1756

The Patient Undergoing Prostate Surgery 1762

- Surgical Procedures 1762
- Complications 1762

- *Nursing Process: Patient Undergoing Prostatectomy* 1765

DISORDERS AFFECTING THE TESTES AND ADJACENT

STRUCTURES 1769

- Orchitis 1769
- Epididymitis 1770
 - Pathophysiology 1770
 - Clinical Manifestations 1770
 - Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 1770
 - Medical Management 1770
 - Nursing Management 1770
- Testicular Torsion 1770
- Testicular Cancer 1771
 - Classification of Testicular Tumors 1771
 - Risk Factors 1771
 - Clinical Manifestations 1771
 - Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 1771
 - Medical Management 1773
 - Nursing Management 1773

Hydrocele 1774

Varicocele 1774

Vasectomy 1774

- Nursing Management 1775
- Vasovasostomy (Sterilization Reversal) 1775
- Semen Cryopreservation (Sperm Banking) 1775

DISORDERS AFFECTING THE PENIS 1775

- Phimosis 1775
- Cancer of the Penis 1775
 - Clinical Manifestations 1776
 - Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 1776
 - Prevention 1776
 - Medical Management 1776
- Priapism 1776
- Peyronie Disease 1777
- Urethral Stricture 1777
- Circumcision 1777

54 Assessment and Management of Patients Who Are LGBTQ 1780

Sexuality and Gender Identity 1781

- Sexuality 1781
- Gender Identity 1781

Statistics on LGBTQ Populations 1781

Health Risks 1782

Assessment 1783

- Gerontologic Considerations 1784

Assessment and Management of Patients Seeking

Gender Reassignment 1784

- Medical Management 1785

- *Nursing Process: The Patient Undergoing Gender Reassignment Surgery* 1791

UNIT 13 Integumentary Function 1796

55 Assessment of Integumentary Function 1798

- Anatomic and Physiologic Overview 1799**
 Anatomy of the Skin, Hair, Nails, and Glands of the Skin 1799
 Functions of the Skin 1801
 Gerontologic Considerations 1802
- Assessment 1802**
 Health History 1803
 Physical Assessment 1803
 Skin Consequences of Select Systemic Diseases 1812
- Diagnostic Evaluation 1813**
 Skin Biopsy 1813
 Patch Testing 1813
 Skin Scrapings 1813
 Tzanck Smear 1813
 Wood Light Examination 1813
 Clinical Photographs 1813
 Nursing Implications 1813

56 Management of Patients with Dermatologic Disorders 1815

SKIN CARE 1816

- Protecting the Skin 1816
 Preventing Secondary Infection 1816
 Wound Dressing Care 1816
 Autolytic Débridement 1817
 Categories of Dressings 1817
 Medical Management 1819
 Nursing Management 1821
- Pressure Injury 1821**
- *Nursing Process: The Patient with Pressure Injury* 1821

PRURITUS 1829

- General Pruritus 1829**
 Gerontologic Considerations 1829
 Pathophysiology 1829
 Medical Management 1830
 Nursing Management 1830

- Perineal and Perianal Pruritus 1830**
 Management 1830

SECRETORY DISORDERS 1830

- Hidradenitis Suppurativa 1831**
 Pathophysiology 1831
 Clinical Manifestations 1831
 Management 1831
- Seborrheic Dermatitis 1831**
 Clinical Manifestations 1831
 Medical Management 1831
 Nursing Management 1832

- Acne Vulgaris 1832**
 Pathophysiology 1832
 Clinical Manifestations 1832
 Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 1832
 Medical Management 1832
 Nursing Management 1834

INFECTIOUS DERMATOSES 1834

- Bacterial Skin Infections 1834**

- Impetigo 1835**
 Clinical Manifestations 1835
 Medical Management 1835
 Nursing Management 1835
- Folliculitis, Furuncles, and Carbuncles 1835**
 Medical Management 1836
 Nursing Management 1836

Viral Skin Infections 1836

- Herpes Zoster 1836**
 Clinical Manifestations 1837
 Medical Management 1837
 Nursing Management 1837
- Herpes Simplex 1838**
 COVID-19 Considerations 1838

Fungal (Mycotic) Skin Infections 1838

Parasitic Skin Infestations 1838

- Pediculosis: Lice Infestation 1838**
 Clinical Manifestations 1838
 Medical Management 1839
 Nursing Management 1840
- Scabies 1840**
 Clinical Manifestations 1840
 Gerontologic Considerations 1840
 Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 1840
 Medical Management 1840
 Nursing Management 1841

NONINFECTIOUS INFLAMMATORY DERMATOSES 1841

- Irritant Contact Dermatitis 1841**
 Clinical Manifestations 1841
 Management 1841
 COVID-19 Considerations 1841

Psoriasis 1842

- Pathophysiology 1842
 Clinical Manifestations 1842
 Complications 1842
 Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 1843
 Medical Management 1843
 Nursing Management 1844

Generalized Exfoliative Dermatitis 1845

- Clinical Manifestations 1845
 Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 1845
 Medical Management 1845
 Nursing Management 1845

BLISTERING DISEASES 1846

- Pemphigus Vulgaris 1846**
 Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 1846
 Management 1846

Bullous Pemphigoid 1846

- Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 1846
 Management 1847

Dermatitis Herpetiformis 1847

- Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 1847
 Management 1847

- *Nursing Process: Care of the Patient with a Blistering Disease* 1847

Toxic Epidermal Necrolysis and Stevens–Johnson Syndrome 1848

- Clinical Manifestations 1849
 Complications 1849
 Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 1849

Medical Management 1849

- *Nursing Process*: Care of the Patient with Toxic Epidermal Necrolysis or Stevens–Johnson Syndrome 1849

SKIN TUMORS 1851

Benign Skin Tumors 1851

Cysts 1851
 Seborrheic and Actinic Keratoses 1851
 Verrucae: Warts 1852
 Angiomas 1852
 Pigmented Nevi: Moles 1852
 Keloids 1852
 Dermatofibroma 1852
 Neurofibromatosis: Von Recklinghausen Disease 1852

Malignant Skin Tumors 1852

Basal Cell Carcinoma and Squamous Cell Carcinoma 1852
 Clinical Manifestations 1853
 Medical Management 1853
 Nursing Management 1854
 Melanoma 1855
 Clinical Manifestations 1855
 Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 1855
 Medical Management 1856
 Nursing Management 1856

Metastatic Skin Tumors 1859

Kaposi Sarcoma 1859

PLASTIC, RECONSTRUCTIVE, AND COSMETIC PROCEDURES 1859

Wound Coverage: Grafts and Flaps 1859

Skin Grafts 1859
 Flaps 1859

Cosmetic Procedures 1860

Chemical Face Peeling 1860
 Dermabrasion 1860
 Facial Reconstructive Surgery 1860
 Rhytidectomy 1860

Laser Treatment of Cutaneous Lesions 1860

Nursing Management 1861

57 Management of Patients with Burn Injury 1865

Overview of Burn Injury 1865

Incidence 1865
 Gerontologic Considerations 1866
 Prevention 1866
 Outlook for Survival and Recovery 1867
 Severity 1867
 Pathophysiology 1869

Management of Burn Injury 1873

Emergent/Resuscitative Phase 1873

On-the-Scene Care 1873
 Medical Management 1874
 Nursing Management 1875

Acute/Intermediate Phase 1876

Medical Management 1876
 Nursing Management 1884

Rehabilitation Phase 1887

Psychological Support 1887
 Abnormal Wound Healing 1888

- *Nursing Process*: Care of the Patient during the Rehabilitation Phase 1889

Outpatient Burn Care 1890

UNIT 14

Sensory Function 1894

58 Assessment and Management of Patients with Eye and Vision Disorders 1896

ASSESSMENT OF THE EYE 1897

Anatomic and Physiologic Overview 1897

Assessment 1899
 Ocular History 1899
 Visual Acuity 1899
 External Eye Examination 1901

Diagnostic Evaluation 1901

Direct Ophthalmoscopy 1901
 Indirect Ophthalmoscopy 1901
 Slit-Lamp Examination 1901
 Tonometry 1901
 Color Vision Testing 1902
 Amsler Grid 1902
 Ultrasonography 1902
 Optical Coherence Tomography 1902
 Fundus Photography 1902
 Laser Scanning 1902
 Angiography 1902
 Perimetry Testing 1903

IMPAIRED VISION 1903

Refractive Errors 1903

Vision Impairment and Blindness 1903

Assessment and Diagnostic Testing 1903
 Gerontologic Considerations 1904
 Medical Management 1904
 Nursing Management 1906

OCULAR MEDICATION ADMINISTRATION 1907

Common Ocular Medications 1908

Topical Anesthetic Agents 1908
 Mydriatic and Cycloplegic Agents 1908
 Medications Used to Treat Glaucoma 1908
 Anti-Infective Medications 1908
 Corticosteroids and Nonsteroidal Anti-Inflammatory Drugs 1909
 Antiallergy Medications 1909
 Ocular Irrigants and Lubricants 1909
 Nursing Management 1909

GLAUCOMA 1909

Physiology 1910
 Pathophysiology 1911
 Classification of Glaucoma 1911
 Clinical Manifestations 1911
 Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 1912
 Medical Management 1912
 Nursing Management 1914

CATARACTS 1914

Pathophysiology 1914
 Clinical Manifestations 1915
 Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 1915
 Medical Management 1915
 Nursing Management 1917

CORNEAL DISORDERS 1918

Corneal Dystrophies 1918

Keratoconus 1918
 Fuchs Endothelial Dystrophy 1918

Corneal Surgeries 1918

Phototherapeutic Keratectomy 1918
 Penetrating Keratoplasty 1918
 Additional Keratoplasty Surgeries 1919
 Keratoprosthesis 1919
 Nursing Management 1919

Refractive Surgeries 1919
 Laser Vision Correction Photorefractive
 Keratectomy 1920
 Phakic Intraocular Lenses 1920
 Conductive Keratoplasty 1920

RETINAL DISORDERS 1920
Retinal Detachment 1920
 Clinical Manifestations 1921
 Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 1921
 Surgical Management 1921
 Nursing Management 1921

Retinal Vascular Disorders 1921
 Central Retinal Vein Occlusion 1921
 Branch Retinal Vein Occlusion 1922
 Central Retinal Artery Occlusion 1922

Age-Related Macular Degeneration 1922
 Medical Management 1923
 Nursing Management 1923

Orbital and Ocular Trauma 1923
 Orbital Trauma 1923
 Soft Tissue Injury and Hemorrhage 1923
 Orbital Fractures 1924
 Foreign Bodies 1924

Ocular Trauma 1924
 Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 1924
 Medical Management 1925

INFECTIOUS AND INFLAMMATORY CONDITIONS 1926
Dry Eyes 1926
 Clinical Manifestations 1926
 Assessment and Diagnostic
 Findings 1926
 Management 1926

Conjunctivitis 1927
 Clinical Manifestations 1927
 Assessment and Diagnostic
 Findings 1927
 Types of Conjunctivitis 1927
 Medical Management 1928

Uveitis 1929
 Medical Management 1929

Orbital Cellulitis 1929
 Medical Management 1929

ORBITAL AND OCULAR TUMORS 1929
 Benign Tumors of the Orbit 1929
 Benign Tumors of the Eyelids 1930
 Benign Tumors of the Conjunctiva 1930
 Malignant Tumors of the Orbit 1930
 Malignant Tumors of the Eyelid 1930
 Malignant Tumors of the Conjunctiva 1930
 Malignant Tumors of the Globe 1930

SURGICAL PROCEDURES AND ENUCLEATION 1931
Orbital Surgeries 1931
Enucleation 1931
 Ocular Prostheses 1931
 Medical Management 1932
 Nursing Management 1932

OCULAR CONSEQUENCES OF SYSTEMIC DISEASE 1932
Diabetic Retinopathy 1932
Cytomegalovirus Retinitis 1932
 Medical Management 1933
Hypertension-Related Eye Changes 1933

**59 Assessment and Management of Patients with
 Hearing and Balance Disorders 1935**

ASSESSMENT OF THE EAR 1936
Anatomic and Physiologic Overview 1936
 Anatomy of the External Ear 1936
 Anatomy of the Middle Ear 1937
 Anatomy of the Inner Ear 1937
 Function of the Ears 1938

Assessment 1938
 Inspection of the External Ear 1938
 Otoscopic Examination 1938
 Evaluation of Gross Auditory
 Acuity 1940
 Cultural Considerations 1941

Diagnostic Evaluation 1941
 Audiometry 1941
 Tympanogram 1942
 Auditory Brain Stem Response
 Audiometry 1942
 Electronystagmography 1942
 Platform Posturography 1943
 Sinusoidal Harmonic Acceleration 1943
 Middle Ear Endoscopy 1943

HEARING LOSS 1943
 Clinical Manifestations 1944
 Prevention 1944
 Gerontologic Considerations 1945
 Medical Management 1945
 Nursing Management 1945

CONDITIONS OF THE EXTERNAL EAR 1946
Cerumen Impaction 1946
 Management 1946

Foreign Bodies 1947
 Management 1947

External Otitis (Otitis Externa) 1947
 Clinical Manifestations 1947
 Medical Management 1947
 Nursing Management 1947

Malignant External Otitis 1947
Masses of the External Ear 1948

CONDITIONS OF THE MIDDLE EAR 1948
Tympanic Membrane Perforation 1948
 Medical Management 1948

Acute Otitis Media 1948
 Clinical Manifestations 1948
 Medical Management 1948

Serous Otitis Media 1949
 Clinical Manifestations 1949
 Management 1949

Chronic Otitis Media 1949
 Clinical Manifestations 1949
 Medical Management 1949

- *Nursing Process: The Patient Undergoing Mastoid
 Surgery 1950*

Otosclerosis 1952

Clinical Manifestations 1952

Medical Management 1952

Middle Ear Masses 1953

CONDITIONS OF THE INNER EAR 1953

Motion Sickness 1953

Clinical Manifestations 1953

Management 1953

Ménière's Disease 1953

Clinical Manifestations 1953

Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 1953

Medical Management 1954

Benign Paroxysmal Positional Vertigo 1954

Tinnitus 1957

Labyrinthitis 1957

Clinical Manifestations 1957

Management 1957

Ototoxicity 1957

Acoustic Neuroma 1957

Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 1958

Management 1958

AURAL REHABILITATION 1958

Hearing Aids 1958

Implanted Hearing Devices 1960

Hearing Guide Dogs 1961

UNIT 15

Neurologic Function 1964

60 Assessment of Neurologic Function 1966

Anatomic and Physiologic Overview 1967

Cells of the Nervous System 1967

Neurotransmitters 1967

The Central Nervous System 1968

The Peripheral Nervous System 1971

Motor and Sensory Pathways of the Nervous System 1975

Assessment of the Nervous System 1977

Health History 1977

Physical Assessment 1978

Gerontologic Considerations 1984

Diagnostic Evaluation 1985

Computed Tomography Scanning 1985

Magnetic Resonance Imaging 1986

Positron Emission Tomography 1987

Single-Photon Emission Computed Tomography 1987

Cerebral Angiography 1987

Myelography 1988

Noninvasive Carotid Flow Studies 1988

Transcranial Doppler 1988

Electroencephalography 1988

Electromyography 1989

Nerve Conduction Studies 1989

Evoked Potential Studies 1990

Lumbar Puncture and Examination of Cerebrospinal Fluid 1990

Promoting Home, Community-Based, and Transitional Care 1990

61 Management of Patients with Neurologic Dysfunction 1992

ALTERED LEVEL OF CONSCIOUSNESS 1993

Pathophysiology 1993

Clinical Manifestations 1994

Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 1994

Medical Management 1994

- *Nursing Process: The Patient with an Altered Level of Consciousness* 1994

INCREASED INTRACRANIAL PRESSURE 2000

Pathophysiology 2000

Clinical Manifestations 2000

Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 2001

Complications 2001

Medical Management 2001

- *Nursing Process: The Patient with Increased Intracranial Pressure* 2004

INTRACRANIAL SURGERY 2010

Supratentorial and Infratentorial Approaches 2011

Preoperative Management 2011

Medical Management 2011

Nursing Management 2011

Postoperative Management 2011

Reducing Cerebral Edema 2012

Relieving Pain and Preventing Seizures 2012

Monitoring Intracranial Pressure 2012

- *Nursing Process: The Patient Who Has Undergone Intracranial Surgery* 2012

Transsphenoidal Approach 2016

Complications 2016

Preoperative Management 2016

Medical Management 2016

Nursing Management 2016

Postoperative Management 2016

Medical Management 2016

Nursing Management 2016

OTHER NEUROLOGIC DYSFUNCTIONS 2016

Delirium 2016

Dementia 2017

Pseudobulbar Affect 2017

SEIZURE DISORDERS 2017

Pathophysiology 2019

Clinical Manifestations 2019

Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 2019

Nursing Management 2020

The Epilepsies 2020

Pathophysiology 2020

Epilepsy in Women 2021

Gerontologic Considerations 2022

Prevention 2022

Medical Management 2022

- *Nursing Process: The Patient with Epilepsy* 2023

Status Epilepticus 2025

Medical Management 2025

Nursing Management 2026

HEADACHE 2026

Pathophysiology 2026

Clinical Manifestations 2027
 Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 2027
 Prevention 2028
 Medical Management 2028
 Nursing Management 2029

62 Management of Patients with Cerebrovascular Disorders 2031

Ischemic Stroke 2032

COVID-19 Considerations 2032
 Pathophysiology 2032
 Clinical Manifestations 2033
 Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 2035
 Prevention 2035
 Medical Management 2036

- *Nursing Process: The Patient Recovering from an Ischemic Stroke* 2040

Hemorrhagic Stroke 2048

Pathophysiology 2048
 Clinical Manifestations 2049
 Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 2049
 Prevention 2049
 Complications 2049
 Medical Management 2050

- *Nursing Process: The Patient with a Hemorrhagic Stroke* 2051

63 Management of Patients with Neurologic Trauma 2055

Head Injuries 2056

Pathophysiology 2056
 Clinical Manifestations 2057
 Veterans Considerations 2057
 Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 2057
 Gerontologic Considerations 2057
 Medical Management 2057

Brain Injury 2058

Types of Brain Injury 2058
 Medical Management 2060

- *Nursing Process: The Patient with a Traumatic Brain Injury* 2061

Spinal Cord Injury (SCI) 2070

Pathophysiology 2070
 Veterans Considerations 2070
 Clinical Manifestations 2070
 Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 2072
 Emergency Management 2073
 Medical Management (Acute Phase) 2074
 Management of Acute Complications of Spinal Cord Injury 2075

- *Nursing Process: The Patient with Acute Spinal Cord Injury* 2076
 Medical Management of Long-Term Complications of SCI 2081
- *Nursing Process: The Patient with Tetraplegia or Paraplegia* 2081

64 Management of Patients with Neurologic Infections, Autoimmune Disorders, and Neuropathies 2088

INFECTIOUS NEUROLOGIC DISORDERS 2088

Meningitis 2088

Pathophysiology 2089
 Clinical Manifestations 2089
 Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 2090
 Prevention 2090
 Medical Management 2090
 Nursing Management 2090

Brain Abscess 2091

Pathophysiology 2091
 Clinical Manifestations 2091
 Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 2091
 Medical Management 2091
 Nursing Management 2092

Herpes Simplex Encephalitis 2092

Pathophysiology 2092
 Clinical Manifestations 2092
 Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 2092
 Medical Management 2092
 Nursing Management 2092

Arthropod-Borne Virus Encephalitis 2093

Pathophysiology 2093
 Clinical Manifestations 2093
 Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 2093
 Medical Management 2093
 Nursing Management 2093

Creutzfeldt–Jakob and Variant Creutzfeldt–Jakob Diseases 2093

Pathophysiology 2093
 Clinical Manifestations 2094
 Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 2094
 Medical Management 2094
 Nursing Management 2094

AUTOIMMUNE PROCESSES 2094

Multiple Sclerosis 2094

Pathophysiology 2095
 Clinical Manifestations 2095
 Gerontologic Considerations 2096
 Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 2096
 Medical Management 2096

- *Nursing Process: The Patient with MS* 2097

Myasthenia Gravis 2100

Pathophysiology 2100
 Clinical Manifestations 2101
 Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 2101
 Medical Management 2101
 Complications 2102
 Nursing Management 2102

Guillain–Barré Syndrome 2103

Pathophysiology 2103
 Clinical Manifestations 2103
 Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 2104
 Medical Management 2104

- *Nursing Process: The Patient with GBS* 2104

CRANIAL NERVE DISORDERS 2106

- Trigeminal Neuralgia 2108
 - Medical Management 2108
 - Nursing Management 2109
- Bell's Palsy 2109
 - Medical Management 2109
 - Nursing Management 2110

DISORDERS OF THE PERIPHERAL NERVOUS SYSTEM 2110

- Peripheral Neuropathies 2110
- Mononeuropathy 2110

65 Management of Patients with Oncologic or Degenerative Neurologic Disorders 2112**ONCOLOGIC DISORDERS OF THE BRAIN AND SPINAL CORD 2112**

- Brain Tumors 2113
 - Types of Primary Brain Tumors 2113
 - Gerontologic Considerations 2114
 - Clinical Manifestations 2114
 - Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 2116
 - Medical Management 2117
 - Nursing Management 2118
- Cerebral Metastases 2118
 - Medical Management 2118
 - *Nursing Process: The Patient with Nervous System Metastases or Primary Brain Tumor* 2118

Spinal Cord Tumors 2121

- Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 2121
- Medical Management 2121
- Nursing Management 2121

DEGENERATIVE DISORDERS 2122

- Parkinson's Disease 2122
 - Pathophysiology 2122
 - Clinical Manifestations 2123
 - Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 2124
 - Medical Management 2124
 - *Nursing Process: The Patient with Parkinson's Disease* 2126

Huntington Disease 2129

- Pathophysiology 2129
- Clinical Manifestations 2129
- Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 2129
- Medical Management 2129

Amyotrophic Lateral Sclerosis 2131

- Clinical Manifestations 2131
- Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 2131
- Management 2131

Muscular Dystrophies 2132

- Medical Management 2132
- Nursing Management 2132

Degenerative Disc Disease 2133

- Pathophysiology 2133
- Gerontologic Considerations 2134
- Clinical Manifestations 2134
- Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 2134
- Medical Management 2134

Herniation of a Cervical Intervertebral Disc 2134

- Clinical Manifestations 2134
 - Medical Management 2135
- *Nursing Process: The Patient Undergoing a Cervical Discectomy* 2135

Herniation of a Lumbar Disc 2136

- Clinical Manifestations 2137
- Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 2137
- Medical Management 2137
- Nursing Management 2138

Post-Polio Syndrome 2139

- Pathophysiology 2139
- Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 2139
- Management 2139

UNIT

16

Acute Community-Based Challenges 2142

66 Management of Patients with Infectious Diseases 2144**The Infectious Process 2145**

- The Chain of Infection 2145
- Colonization, Infection, and Infectious Disease 2148

Infection Control and Prevention 2149

- Preventing Infection in Health Care Settings 2149
- Preventing Infection in the Community 2155

Home-Based Care of the Patient with an Infectious Disease 2157

- Reducing Risk to the Patient 2157
- Reducing Risk to Household Members 2158
- Nursing Management 2159

Diarrheal Diseases 2160

- Transmission 2160
- Causes 2160

- *Nursing Process: The Patient with Infectious Diarrhea* 2166

Sexually Transmitted Infections 2168

- Syphilis 2168
 - Stages of Syphilis 2168
 - Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 2168
 - Medical Management 2169
 - Nursing Management 2169
- Chlamydia trachomatis* and *Neisseria gonorrhoeae* Infections 2169
 - Clinical Manifestations 2169
 - Complications 2169
 - Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 2169
 - Medical Management 2170
 - Nursing Management 2170

- *Nursing Process: The Patient with a Sexually Transmitted Infection* 2170

Emerging Infectious Diseases 2171

- COVID-19 2172
 - Pathophysiology 2172
 - Risk Factors 2172
 - Clinical Manifestations 2172
 - Medical Management 2172
 - Nursing Management 2173
- Zika Virus 2173
- West Nile Virus 2173
- Ebola Virus Disease 2174

- Pathophysiology 2174
- Clinical Manifestations 2174
- Medical Management 2174
- Nursing Management 2174
- Legionnaires Disease 2175
 - Pathophysiology 2175
 - Risk Factors 2175
 - Clinical Manifestations 2175
 - Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 2175
 - Medical Management 2175
 - Nursing Management 2175
- Pertussis 2175
 - Pathophysiology 2175
 - Clinical Manifestations 2176
 - Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 2176
 - Medical Management 2176
 - Nursing Management 2176
- Travel and Immigration 2176**
 - Immigration and Acquired Immune Deficiency Syndrome 2176
 - Immigration and Tuberculosis 2176
 - Immigration and Vector-Borne Diseases 2176

67 Emergency Nursing 2179

ISSUES IN EMERGENCY NURSING CARE 2180

- Documentation of Consent and Privacy 2180
- Limiting Exposure to Health Risks 2180
 - COVID-19 Considerations 2181
- Violence in the Emergency Department 2181
- Providing Holistic Care 2182
 - Patient-Focused Interventions 2182
 - Family-Focused Interventions 2182
 - Caring for Emergency Personnel 2183
 - COVID-19 Considerations 2183

EMERGENCY NURSING AND THE CONTINUUM OF CARE 2184

- Discharge Planning 2184
- Community and Transitional Services 2184
- Gerontologic Considerations 2184
- Obesity Considerations 2185

PRINCIPLES OF EMERGENCY CARE 2185

- Triage 2185
 - COVID-19 Considerations 2186
- Assess and Intervene 2186

AIRWAY OBSTRUCTION 2187

- Pathophysiology 2187
- Clinical Manifestations 2187
- Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 2187
- Management 2187

HEMORRHAGE 2189

- Management 2189

HYPOVOLEMIC SHOCK 2190

WOUNDS 2190

- Management 2191

TRAUMA 2191

- Collection of Forensic Evidence 2191
- Injury Prevention 2192
- Multiple Trauma 2192
 - Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 2192
 - Management 2192

Intra-Abdominal Injuries 2193

- Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 2193
- Management 2195

Crush Injuries 2195

- Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 2195
- Management 2195

Fractures 2195

- Management 2196

ENVIRONMENTAL EMERGENCIES 2196

Heat-Induced Illnesses 2196

- Gerontologic Considerations 2196
- Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 2197
- Management 2197

Frostbite 2197

- Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 2197
- Management 2197

Hypothermia 2198

- Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 2198
- Management 2198

Nonfatal Drowning 2199

- Management 2199

Decompression Sickness 2200

- Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 2200
- Management 2200

Animal and Human Bites 2200

Snakebites 2200

- Clinical Manifestations 2200
- Management 2201

Spider Bites 2202

Tick Bites 2202

POISONING 2202

Ingested (Swallowed) Poisons 2202

Carbon Monoxide Poisoning 2203

- Clinical Manifestations 2203
- Management 2204

Skin Contamination Poisoning (Chemical Burns) 2204

Food Poisoning 2204

SUBSTANCE USE DISORDER (SUD) 2205

Acute Alcohol Intoxication 2205

Alcohol Withdrawal Syndrome 2210

VIOLENCE, ABUSE, AND NEGLECT 2210

Family Violence, Abuse, and Neglect 2211

- Gerontologic Considerations 2211
- Clinical Manifestations 2211
- Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 2211
- Management 2211

Sexual Assault 2212

- Assessment and Diagnostic Findings 2212
- Management 2212

Human Trafficking 2213

PSYCHIATRIC EMERGENCIES 2214

Patients Who Are Overactive 2214

Patients with Posttraumatic Stress Disorder (PTSD) 2214

- Veterans Considerations 2214

Patients Who Are Underactive or Depressed 2215

Patients Who Are Suicidal 2215

68 Disaster Nursing 2218

Disaster Planning 2219

Federal, State, and Local Responses to

Disasters 2219

Federal Agencies 2219

State and Local Agencies 2220

The Incident Command System 2220

Hospital Emergency Preparedness Plans 2221

COVID-19 Considerations 2221

Components of the Emergency Operations
Plan 2221

Initiating the Emergency Operations

Plan 2222

Preparedness and Response 2227

Recognition and Awareness 2227

Personal Protective Equipment (PPE) 2227

Decontamination 2229

Natural Disasters 2229**Outbreaks, Epidemics, and Pandemics 2230****Weapons of Terror 2230**

Blast Injury 2231

Biologic Weapons 2232

Chemical Weapons 2234

Nuclear Radiation Exposure 2237

Appendix A: Diagnostic Studies and Interpretation*Available on [thePoint](#)***Index I-1**

Case Studies in This Book

QSEN Cases That Open Each Unit

- UNIT 1 Principles of Nursing Practice**
Educating Older Adults to Navigate Their Electronic Health Records 2
- UNIT 2 Concepts and Principles of Patient Management**
Promoting Teamwork and Collaboration in Palliative Care 194
- UNIT 3 Perioperative Concepts and Nursing Management**
Maintaining a Culture of Safety Using the Surgical Safety Checklist 394
- UNIT 4 Gas Exchange and Respiratory Function**
Providing Evidence-Based Care for a Patient with COVID-19 460
- UNIT 5 Cardiovascular and Circulatory Function**
Using Technology to Prevent Medication Errors 648
- UNIT 6 Hematologic Function**
Evaluating Complications of Chemotherapy 882
- UNIT 7 Immunologic Function**
Utilizing a Team Approach to Care for the Patient with HIV 984
- UNIT 8 Musculoskeletal Function**
Implementing Evidence-Based Practice in Pain Management 1094
- UNIT 9 Digestive and Gastrointestinal Function**
Improving Nutrition Utilizing Quality Indicators 1206
- UNIT 10 Metabolic and Endocrine Function**
Applying Patient-Centered Care for the Patient with Diabetes 1340
- UNIT 11 Kidney and Urinary Tract Function**
Avoiding Falls for the Patient at Risk 1532
- UNIT 12 Reproductive Function**
Implementing Alternative, Complementary, and Spiritual Practices 1638
- UNIT 13 Integumentary Function**
Managing and Preventing Skin Cancer 1796
- UNIT 14 Sensory Function**
Making a Rapid Change to Telehealth 1894
- UNIT 15 Neurologic Function**
Developing a Team-Based Plan of Care 1964
- UNIT 16 Acute Community-Based Challenges**
Using Evidence-Based Practices for Effective Care during a Novel Virus Outbreak 2142

Cases That Unfold Across Chapters

- Unfolding Patient Stories: Vincent Brody**
Part 1: Chapter 3 66
Part 2: Chapter 55 1803
- Unfolding Patient Stories: Skyler Hansen**
Part 1: Chapter 5 111
Part 2: Chapter 46 1507
- Unfolding Patient Stories: Stan Checketts**
Part 1: Chapter 9 219
Part 2: Chapter 41 1304
- Unfolding Patient Stories: Doris Bowman**
Part 1: Chapter 12 309
Part 2: Chapter 51 1705
- Unfolding Patient Stories: Vernon Watkins**
Part 1: Chapter 14 408
Part 2: Chapter 58 1907
- Unfolding Patient Stories: Kenneth Bronson**
Part 1: Chapter 19 536
Part 2: Chapter 22 706
- Unfolding Patient Stories: Jennifer Hoffman**
Part 1: Chapter 20 642
Part 2: Chapter 33 1046
- Unfolding Patient Stories: Carl Shapiro**
Part 1: Chapter 23 732
Part 2: Chapter 67 2215
- Unfolding Patient Stories: Lloyd Bennett**
Part 1: Chapter 28 894
Part 2: Chapter 47 1546
- Unfolding Patient Stories: Marilyn Hughes**
Part 1: Chapter 37 1161
Part 2: Chapter 60 1980

Special Charts in This Book

Assessment

- Chart 2-2, Assessing Potential Struggles in Function or Movement 38
- Chart 2-8, Assessing the Home Environment 52
- Chart 2-9, Assessing the Need for Home Visits 53
- Chart 4-3, Patient Profile 78
- Chart 4-4, Assessing the Health of People with Disability 81
- Chart 4-7, Assessing for Patients' Cultural Beliefs 92
- Chart 5-1, Assessing for Stress 104
- Chart 6-6, Assessing Psychosocial Genetic Health 136
- Chart 8-3, Assessing Mental Status: Mini-Mental State Examination Sample Items 178
- Chart 8-7, Confusion Assessment Method (CAM) 183
- Chart 10-3, Assessing Arterial Blood Gases 265
- Chart 10-5, Assessing for Phlebitis 268
- Chart 10-6, Assessing for Infiltration 268
- Chart 13-3, Preferred Language for Assessing Goals of Care 375
- Chart 13-8, Cultural and Spiritual Issues at the End-of-Life 383
- Chart 17-6, Assessing Psychosocial Factors Related to Respiratory Function and Disease 474
- Chart 18-4, Assessing for Obstructive Sleep Apnea 510
- Chart 20-2, Assessing Patients with Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease 607
- Chart 21-3, Assessing Patients for Orthostatic Hypotension 666
- Chart 23-4, Assessing Angina 736
- Chart 23-6, Assessing for Acute Coronary Syndrome or Acute Myocardial Infarction 738
- Chart 25-1, Heart Failure 796
- Chart 29-10, Assessing for Thrombosis and Bleeding in Disseminated Intravascular Coagulation 941
- Chart 31-3, Assessing for Immune Dysfunction 996
- Chart 33-1, Allergy Assessment Form 1043
- Chart 34-1, Assessing for Rheumatic Disorders 1070
- Chart 35-3, Assessing for Peripheral Nerve Function 1109
- Chart 39-5, Assessing Patients Receiving Tube Feedings 1246
- Chart 41-1, Rome IV Diagnostic Criteria for Functional Constipation 1288
- Chart 41-6, Assessing for Home Nutrition Support 1318
- Chart 43-9, Assessing for Cirrhosis 1394
- Chart 46-3, Assessing the Patient with Diabetes 1492
- Chart 48-6, Assessing for End-Stage Kidney Disease 1571
- Chart 50-4, Assessing a Woman with a Disability 1649
- Chart 52-1, Abnormal Assessment Findings during Inspection of the Breasts 1711
- Chart 54-1, Personal Information 1784
- Chart 55-2, Assessing for Skin Disorders 1803
- Chart 56-8, Assessing the ABCDEs of Moles 1857

- Chart 58-1, Taking a History of Patients with Eye and Vision Disorders 1900
- Chart 59-3, Assessing for Hearing Loss 1944
- Chart 63-4, Glasgow Coma Scale 2062
- Chart 64-1, Assessing for Brain Abscesses 2091
- Chart 66-5, Assessing for Infectious Disease 2159
- Chart 67-7, Food Poisoning 2204
- Chart 67-8, Assessing for Abuse, Maltreatment, and Neglect 2211

Ethical Dilemma

- Chart 1-7, Common Ethical Principles 25
- Chart 1-10, Steps of an Ethical Analysis 30
- Chart 6-2, Can Predictive Genetic Testing Threaten Patient Autonomy? 126
- Chart 8-8, Does Stopping of Eating and Drinking Violate the Principle of Nonmaleficence? 191
- Chart 13-9, Does Intent Matter When Palliative Care Leads to Death? 387
- Chart 15-1, Can Lack of Civility in the OR Threaten Patient Safety? 417
- Chart 19-7, Is It Ever Ethical to Refuse to Care for a Patient? 541
- Chart 24-3, Can an Adult with a Left Ventricular Assist Device (LVAD) Have the LVAD Deactivated? 781
- Chart 28-2, Can Surrogates Refuse Life-Saving Treatment? 900
- Chart 32-13, What if Maintaining Confidentiality Results in Harm? 1035
- Chart 37-1, Does Informed Consent Always Uphold Autonomy? 1155
- Chart 40-3, Should Patients at the End-of-Life Be Enrolled in Clinical Trials? 1280
- Chart 42-5, When Is Prescribed Care Beneficent and When Is It Paternalistic? 1353
- Chart 48-9, How Can Patient Rights Be Discerned during a Pandemic? 1582
- Chart 52-4, What Is Acceptable Treatment for a Patient with Breast Cancer during a Pandemic? 1724
- Chart 56-9, Should Crowdfunding for Nonevidence-Based Therapies Be Permitted? 1858
- Chart 58-3, Should Preservation of Patient Autonomy Threaten the Welfare of Others? 1904
- Chart 63-3, How Can Advocacy Be Assured for a Patient Who Is Undocumented and Incapacitated? 2061
- Chart 68-2, Who Receives a Mechanical Ventilator When They Are Scarce Commodities During a Pandemic? 2225

Genetics in Nursing Practice

- Chart 4-2, Genetic Aspects of Health Assessment 77
- Chart 6-4, An Essential Tool for All Nurses 135
- Chart 8-1, Genetics Concepts and the Older Adult 169
- Chart 12-1, Genetics Concepts and Oncologic Disorders 305

Chart 14-4, Genetics Concepts and Perioperative Nursing 403
 Chart 17-8, Respiratory Disorders 475
 Chart 21-1, Cardiovascular Disorders 661
 Chart 28-1, Hematologic Disorders 892
 Chart 31-4, Immunologic Disorders 999
 Chart 35-2, Musculoskeletal Disorders 1105
 Chart 38-3, Digestive and Gastrointestinal Disorders 1218
 Chart 43-2, Hepatic Disorders 1368
 Chart 45-1, Metabolic and Endocrine Disorders 1448
 Chart 47-2, Kidney and Urinary Disorders 1544
 Chart 50-2, Female Reproductive Processes 1646
 Chart 53-2, Male Reproductive Disorders 1751
 Chart 55-3, Integumentary Conditions 1804
 Chart 58-2, Eye and Vision Disorders 1900
 Chart 59-2, Hearing Disorders 1943
 Chart 60-1, Neurologic Disorders 1979

Health Promotion

Chart 8-4, Nursing Strategies for Promoting Cognitive Function 179
 Chart 12-2, American Cancer Society Guidelines on Nutrition and Physical Activity for Cancer Prevention 309
 Chart 23-10, Promoting Health After Myocardial Infarction and Other Acute Coronary Syndromes 745
 Chart 25-3, An Exercise Program for Patients with Heart Failure 806
 Chart 25-4, Facts About Dietary Sodium 807
 Chart 32-3, Protecting Against HIV Infection 1010
 Chart 36-2, Strategies for Preventing Acute Low Back Pain 1116
 Chart 36-10, Strategies for Preventing Osteoporosis 1135
 Chart 38-2, Denture Care 1215
 Chart 43-5, Prevention of Hepatitis 1387
 Chart 49-6, Interventions for Urinary Incontinence 1614
 Chart 50-14, Strategies for Women Approaching Menopause 1672
 Chart 51-2, Strategies for the Patient with Genital Herpes 1683
 Chart 56-6, Preventing Skin Cancer 1854
 Chart 57-1, Burn Prevention 1866
 Chart 61-6, Strategies for the Patient with Epilepsy 2025
 Chart 63-1, Preventing Head and Spinal Cord Injuries 2056
 Chart 65-3, Strategies for the Patient with PD 2128
 Chart 67-6, Preventing Heat-Induced Illnesses 2196

Home Care Checklist

Chart 2-6, Managing the Therapeutic Regimen at Home 49
 Chart 7-6, Managing Disability and Chronic Illness at Home 155
 Chart 12-10, The Patient Receiving Care for an Oncologic Disorder 358
 Chart 16-3, Discharge After Surgery 444
 Chart 18-7, The Patient with a Laryngectomy 522
 Chart 19-18, Ventilator Care 568
 Chart 19-25, The Patient with a Thoracotomy 587
 Chart 20-7, Oxygen Therapy 630
 Chart 20-8, Use of Peak Flow Meter in Asthma Management 641

Chart 22-9, Educating the Patient with an Implantable Cardiac Device 722
 Chart 23-5, Managing Angina Pectoris 737
 Chart 23-13, Discharge After Cardiac Surgery 763
 Chart 24-1, Discharge After Valve Replacement 776
 Chart 24-4, The Patient with Cardiomyopathy 784
 Chart 25-6, The Patient with Heart Failure 810
 Chart 26-6, Foot and Leg Care in Peripheral Vascular Disease 834
 Chart 26-11, Prevention of Recurrent Pulmonary Embolism 852
 Chart 29-7, The Patient at Risk for Infection 930
 Chart 29-8, The Patient at Risk for Bleeding 931
 Chart 32-1, Home Administration of Ig Replacement Therapy 1007
 Chart 32-12, Infection Prevention for the Patient with Immune Deficiency 1034
 Chart 33-6, Allergy Management 1055
 Chart 33-7, Managing Food Allergies 1062
 Chart 34-4, The Patient with Rheumatoid Arthritis 1081
 Chart 36-4, Hand or Foot Surgery 1120
 Chart 36-9, The Patient Who Has Had Orthopedic Surgery 1133
 Chart 36-12, The Patient with Osteomyelitis 1144
 Chart 36-13, The Patient with a Bone Tumor 1148
 Chart 37-2, The Patient with a Closed Fracture 1161
 Chart 37-5, The Patient with a Cast, Splint, or Brace 1170
 Chart 37-6, The Patient with an External Fixator 1173
 Chart 37-10, The Patient with an Amputation 1201
 Chart 39-2, The Patient with an Oral Disorder 1238
 Chart 39-4, The Patient Recovering from Neck Surgery 1243
 Chart 39-7, The Patient Receiving Tube Feeding 1252
 Chart 39-8, The Patient with an Esophageal Disorder 1260
 Chart 40-1, The Patient with Gastritis 1270
 Chart 40-2, The Patient with Peptic Ulcer Disease 1277
 Chart 40-5, The Patient with Gastric Cancer 1282
 Chart 41-5, The Patient with Inflammatory Bowel Disease 1312
 Chart 41-7, The Patient Receiving Parenteral Nutrition 1318
 Chart 41-9, Managing Ostomy Care 1325
 Chart 43-3, Management of Ascites 1375
 Chart 45-5, The Patient with Hypothyroidism (Myxedema) 1460
 Chart 45-7, The Patient with Hyperthyroidism 1466
 Chart 45-9, The Patient with Hyperparathyroidism 1472
 Chart 45-10, The Patient with Hypoparathyroidism 1473
 Chart 45-11, The Patient with Adrenal Insufficiency (Addison's Disease) 1478
 Chart 45-13, The Patient with Cushing's Syndrome 1482
 Chart 48-10, The Patient Undergoing HD 1583
 Chart 48-12, Peritoneal Dialysis, Continuous Ambulatory Peritoneal Dialysis, or Continuous Cycling Peritoneal Dialysis 1589
 Chart 51-3, The Patient with Pelvic Inflammatory Disease 1686
 Chart 52-7, Patient with a Drainage Device Following Breast Surgery 1728
 Chart 52-10, Self-Administration of Hematopoietic Growth Factors 1733

Chart 53-5, Postprostatectomy Care 1769
 Chart 57-7, The Patient with a Burn Injury 1891
 Chart 58-9, Intraocular Lens Implant 1917
 Chart 61-3, Discharge After Intracranial Surgery 2015
 Chart 62-6, The Patient Recovering from a Stroke 2053
 Chart 63-6, The Patient with a TBI 2069
 Chart 63-8, The Patient with a Halo Vest 2079
 Chart 63-9, Avoiding Complications of SCI 2085
 Chart 64-3, The Patient with MS 2100
 Chart 64-4, The Patient with GBS 2106
 Chart 65-2, The Patient with Nervous System Metastases or Primary Brain Tumor 2120
 Chart 65-6, The Patient with Cervical Discectomy and Cervical Collar 2137
 Chart 66-4, Prevention of Infection in the Home Care Setting 2158

Nursing Research Profile

Chart 1-8, Moral Distress in Critical-Care Nurses 26
 Chart 2-1, Important Components of Transitional Care 35
 Chart 3-3, Adherence to a Medication Regimen and Informational Support 66
 Chart 4-8, Cultural Beliefs, Perceptions, and Practices of Adult Children of African Immigrants 93
 Chart 5-2, Nursing Students' Attitudes and Use of Holistic Therapies for Stress Relief 110
 Chart 6-3, Living with Breast Cancer Risk 133
 Chart 7-5, Well-Being among Adults with Disabilities in Rural Settings 151
 Chart 8-2, The Association Between Coping Self-efficacy and Frailty in Community-Dwelling Older Adults 177
 Chart 9-4, Evaluation of a Tool to Assess Pain in Older Adults with Dementia 205
 Chart 10-4, Complication Rates of Peripheral IVs 267
 Chart 11-4, Family Participation in the Intensive Care Unit 291
 Chart 12-9, Poor Sleep and Fatigue in Women with Breast Cancer 354
 Chart 13-6, Comparison of Dyspnea Assessment Tools 379
 Chart 14-8, The Efficacy of Prewarming in the Preoperative Setting 413
 Chart 15-3, Sacral Tissue Pressure Injury Prevalence in Surgical Patients 433
 Chart 16-2, An Investigation of PONV in Ambulatory Surgery 442
 Chart 17-5, Dyspnea Assessment 473
 Chart 18-8, Mitigating the Effects of Radiation Therapy on the Oral Mucosa of Patients with Head and Neck Cancers 523
 Chart 19-26, The Role of the Oncology Nurse Navigator 589
 Chart 20-3, Managing Anxiety among Patients with Advanced COPD 619
 Chart 21-2, Depression, Self-Efficacy, and Physical Activity among Patients with Coronary Artery Disease 663
 Chart 22-8, Experiences of Patients Shocked by an Implantable Cardioverter Defibrillator 721
 Chart 23-12, Use of a Postoperative Delirium Screening Scale in Older Adults After Cardiac Surgery 761

Chart 24-2, Factors Affecting Nonadherence After Heart Transplant 780
 Chart 25-5, Medication Nonadherence or Self-Care? 808
 Chart 26-5, Understanding the Relationship Between Peripheral Artery Disease (PAD) Symptoms and Ischemia 833
 Chart 27-4, Medication Adherence among African Americans with Hypertension 877
 Chart 28-5, Blood Transfusions and Vital Sign Frequency 903
 Chart 29-4, Acute Pain Management for Patients with Sickle Cell Disease 924
 Chart 30-2, Fatigue and Sleep Disturbances in Adults with Acute Leukemia 961
 Chart 31-5, Stress Reduction and Effect on Inflammatory Cytokines 1001
 Chart 32-11, Treatment Burden in People Living with HIV 1033
 Chart 33-3, Using Video Discharge Instructions 1048
 Chart 34-2, Assessing Self-Management in Patients with Arthritis 1075
 Chart 35-1, Hand Assessment of Older Adults 1103
 Chart 36-5, Preoperative Telephone Support for Patients Having Total Knee Arthroplasty 1126
 Chart 37-9, Patients' Postamputation Viewing of Selves in the Mirror 1198
 Chart 38-1, Nurse-Led Educational Intervention for Patients with Functional Constipation 1214
 Chart 39-3, Envisioning a Positive Future: Patients Who Are Communication Vulnerable 1241
 Chart 40-4, Understanding Uncertainty and Care Needs in Patients with Gastric Cancer 1282
 Chart 41-11, Spiritual Well-Being Among Patients with Metastatic Colorectal Cancer 1330
 Chart 42-8, Patient Experiences with Education and Satisfaction in Weight Loss Surgery 1359
 Chart 43-11, Psychosocial Adjustments in Patients Undergoing Liver Transplantation 1412
 Chart 44-5, Symptom Clusters in Patients with Pancreatic Cancer 1440
 Chart 45-8, Lifestyle Factors and the Risk of Thyroid Cancer 1468
 Chart 46-10, Health Factors in Adults with Type 1 Diabetes 1524
 Chart 47-3, Positive Outcomes with the Use of a Portable Bladder Ultrasound 1545
 Chart 48-8, Resilience in Patients Receiving Dialysis 1581
 Chart 49-7, Understanding Incontinence-Associated Dermatitis 1615
 Chart 50-12, Stress and Anxiety in Couples Who Conceive via In Vitro Fertilization 1668
 Chart 51-9, Gynecologic Surgery Learning Needs 1703
 Chart 52-6, Effect of Yoga on Lymphedema 1727
 Chart 53-7, Testicular Self-Examination Knowledge 1772
 Chart 54-3, Osteoporosis Prevention Among Transgender Persons 1788
 Chart 55-4, Supporting Self-Care for Radiation-Related Skin Discomfort 1810
 Chart 56-7, Sun Safety in Female College Athletes 1857
 Chart 57-6, Nursing Knowledge, Attitudes, and Beliefs About Delirium in a Burn ICU 1887

- Chart 59-1, Nurses' Beliefs Toward Deaf and Hard of Hearing Interaction 1942
 Chart 60-3, Electroencephalographic Patterns During Nursing Interventions in Neurointensive Care 1989
 Chart 61-2, Aspects of Intracranial Pressure Monitoring 2009
 Chart 62-5, Early Identification of Depression in Caregivers of Stroke Survivors 2047
 Chart 63-2, Head Injury in Older Adults 2058
 Chart 64-2, The Relationship Between MS and Sleep 2099
 Chart 65-7, Improving Confidence with Self-Care Management 2138
 Chart 66-6, Environmental Concerns for Possible Inpatient Transmission of Bacterial Pathogens 2160
 Chart 67-5, Improving Thermoregulation for Patients with Trauma 2194
 Chart 68-4, Whole-Process Training to Improve Use of Personal Protective Equipment 2228

Patient Education

- Chart 2-3, Educating Patients About Activities of Daily Living 38
 Chart 9-2, Educating Patients and Their Families How to Use a Pain Rating Scale 203
 Chart 14-5, Preoperative Instructions to Prevent Postoperative Complications 409
 Chart 16-6, Wound Care Instructions 453
 Chart 19-1, Performing Incentive Spirometry 529
 Chart 19-24, Performing Arm and Shoulder Exercises 586
 Chart 20-5, Breathing Exercises 628
 Chart 20-6, Use of Pressurized Metered-Dose Inhaler (pMDI) 630
 Chart 21-6, Self-Management After Cardiac Catheterization 683
 Chart 26-10, Taking Anticoagulant Medications 849
 Chart 29-3, Taking Oral Iron Supplements 915
 Chart 32-4, The Correct Way to Use a Male Condom 1010
 Chart 33-4, Self-Administration of Epinephrine 1048
 Chart 36-3, Measures to Promote Shoulder Healing of Impingement Syndrome 1118
 Chart 36-7, Avoiding Hip Dislocation After Arthroplasty with Posterior or Posterolateral Approach 1131
 Chart 37-4, Muscle Setting Exercises 1169
 Chart 37-7, Encouraging Exercise After Treatment for Wrist Fracture 1181
 Chart 41-2, Preventing Constipation 1289
 Chart 41-3, Managing Lactose Intolerance 1295
 Chart 41-4, How to Avoid Gluten 1297
 Chart 42-4, Healthy Eating Strategies 1349
 Chart 42-7, Dietary Guidelines for the Patient Who Has Had Bariatric Surgery 1358
 Chart 44-2, Managing Self-Care After Laparoscopic Cholecystectomy 1428
 Chart 46-4, General Considerations for Exercise in People with Diabetes 1497
 Chart 46-6, Basic Skills for People with Diabetes 1507
 Chart 46-7, Self-Injection of Insulin 1510
 Chart 46-9, Guidelines to Follow During Periods of Illness ("Sick Day Rules") 1514
 Chart 46-11, Foot Care Tips 1527
 Chart 47-4, Before and After Urodynamic Testing 1546
 Chart 49-3, Preventing Recurrent Urinary Tract Infections 1609
 Chart 49-8, Strategies for Promoting Urinary Continence 1615
 Chart 49-11, Preventing Renal Calculi 1622
 Chart 49-13, Using Urinary Diversion Collection Appliances 1630
 Chart 49-15, Neobladder Training 1632
 Chart 50-6, The Pelvic Examination 1650
 Chart 50-8, Using Contraceptives 1659
 Chart 51-4, Performing Kegel (Pelvic Muscle) Exercises 1688
 Chart 52-2, Breast Self-Examination 1714
 Chart 52-5, Hand and Arm Care After Axillary Lymph Node Dissection 1727
 Chart 52-8, Exercise After Breast Surgery 1729
 Chart 52-11, Managing Side Effects of Adjuvant Hormonal Therapy in Breast Cancer 1734
 Chart 53-6, Testicular Self-Examination 1772
 Chart 54-4, Postoperative Education for Patients Who Have Had a Vaginoplasty 1793
 Chart 54-5, Postoperative Education for Patients Who Have Had a Phalloplasty 1793
 Chart 56-4, Strategies for Avoiding Irritant Contact Dermatitis 1841
 Chart 58-5, Instilling Eye Medications 1910
 Chart 58-7, Managing Glaucoma 1914
 Chart 58-11, Education for Patients About Preventing Eye Injuries 1923
 Chart 58-12, Education for Patients with Viral Conjunctivitis 1928
 Chart 59-6, Prevention of Otitis Externa 1947
 Chart 59-7, Self-Care After Middle Ear or Mastoid Surgery 1951
 Chart 59-8, Dietary Guidelines for Patients with Ménière's Disease 1954
 Chart 59-12, Tips for Hearing Aid Care 1959
 Chart 61-8, Migraine Headaches 2028
 Chart 66-8, Preventing the Spread of Syphilis 2169

Pharmacology

- Chart 23-3, Self-Administration of Nitroglycerin 734
 Chart 23-8, Administration of Thrombolytic Therapy 741
 Chart 25-2, Administering and Monitoring Diuretic Therapy 801
 Chart 28-7, Pharmacologic Alternatives to Blood Transfusions 906
 Chart 29-9, Medications and Substances That Impair Platelet Function 935
 Chart 42-2, Select Medications That Affect Body Weight 1346
 Chart 45-2, Select Medications That May Alter Thyroid Test Results 1455
 Chart 50-9, Benefits and Risks of Hormonal Contraceptives 1661
 Chart 50-11, Medications That Induce Ovulation 1667
 Chart 53-1, Select Medications Associated with Erectile Dysfunction 1748

Plan of Nursing Care

- Chart 1-5, Example of a Plan of Nursing Care for a Patient Post Laparoscopic Appendectomy 20
- Chart 9-8, Care of the Patient with Acute Pain 220
- Chart 12-6, The Patient with Cancer 337
- Chart 19-23, Care of the Patient After Thoracotomy 583
- Chart 20-4, Care of the Patient with Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease 620
- Chart 23-9, Care of the Patient with an Uncomplicated Myocardial Infarction 743
- Chart 23-11, Care of the Patient After Cardiac Surgery 755
- Chart 26-4, The Patient with Peripheral Vascular Problems 830
- Chart 29-11, The Patient with Disseminated Intravascular Coagulation 943
- Chart 32-10, Care of the Patient with AIDS 1027
- Chart 34-3, Care of the Patient with a Rheumatic Disorder 1075
- Chart 36-6, The Patient with a Total Hip Arthroplasty 1127
- Chart 37-8, Care of the Older Adult Patient with a Fractured Hip 1187
- Chart 41-8, The Patient Undergoing Ostomy Surgery 1319
- Chart 43-10, The Patient with Impaired Liver Function 1396
- Chart 44-4, Care of the Patient with Acute Pancreatitis 1434
- Chart 45-4, Care of the Patient with Hypothyroidism 1458
- Chart 47-5, Care of the Patient Undergoing Diagnostic Testing of the Renal-Urologic System 1547
- Chart 48-7, The Patient with End-Stage Kidney Disease 1573
- Chart 48-13, Care of the Patient Undergoing Kidney Surgery 1593
- Chart 53-3, The Patient with Prostate Cancer 1757
- Chart 57-5, Care of the Patient during the Emergent/Resuscitative Phase of Burn Injury 1877
- Chart 59-9, Care of the Patient with Vertigo 1955
- Chart 66-7, Care of the Patient with an Infectious Disease 2161

Procedural Guidelines (available on thePoint)

- Assisting the Patient Undergoing Thoracentesis
 - Chapter 13, 377
 - Chapter 17, 492
 - Chapter 19, 544
- Setup and Management of Chest Drainage Systems
 - Chapter 19, 595
 - Chapter 23, 753
- Performing Open System Tracheal Suction
 - Chapter 19, 559
 - Chapter 23, 760
- Care of the Patient with a Tracheostomy Tube
 - Chapter 18, 521
 - Chapter 19, 568
- Managing Immunoglobulin Therapy
 - Chapter 29, 922, 934
 - Chapter 30, 959
 - Chapter 32, 1007
 - Chapter 56, 1846, 1849
 - Chapter 64, 2102
 - Chapter 65, 2139

- Declogging a Feeding Tube
 - Chapter 39, 1251
- Changing an Ostomy Appliance
 - Chapter 41, 1323
- Assisting with Percutaneous Liver Biopsy
 - Chapter 43, 1370
- Assisting with a Paracentesis
 - Chapter 43, 1374
- Obtaining an Optimal Pap Smear
 - Chapter 50, 1651
 - Chapter 51, 1681
- Assisting with a Lumbar Puncture
 - Chapter 60, 1990
 - Chapter 62, 2049

Risk Factors

- Chart 11-3, Hypovolemic Shock 285
- Chart 11-5, Distributive Shock 292
- Chart 14-3, Surgical Complications 402
- Chart 17-7, Respiratory Disease 474
- Chart 18-5, Epistaxis 511
- Chart 18-6, Laryngeal Cancer 514
- Chart 19-5, Pneumonia Based upon Pathogen Type 532
- Chart 19-8, Aspiration 545
- Chart 19-10, Tuberculosis 547
- Chart 19-20, Acute Respiratory Distress Syndrome 571
- Chart 20-1, Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease 605
- Chart 22-2, Atrial Fibrillation 699
- Chart 23-1, Coronary Artery Disease 728
- Chart 24-6, Infective Endocarditis 785
- Chart 26-3, Atherosclerosis and Peripheral Artery Disease 828
- Chart 26-8, Deep Vein Thrombosis and Pulmonary Embolism 845
- Chart 27-1, Hypertension 867
- Chart 29-6, Development of Infection and Bleeding in Patients with Hematologic Disorders 929
- Chart 30-1, B Symptoms 958
- Chart 30-3, Multiple Myeloma 975
- Chart 32-2, Risks Associated with HIV Infection 1009
- Chart 36-11, Osteoporosis 1137
- Chart 41-10, Colorectal Cancer 1325
- Chart 43-7, Hepatitis B 1388
- Chart 43-8, Hepatitis C 1391
- Chart 44-1, Cholelithiasis 1419
- Chart 46-1, Diabetes 1488
- Chart 48-3, Renal Cancer 1563
- Chart 49-1, Urinary Tract Infection 1605
- Chart 49-4, Urinary Incontinence 1612
- Chart 49-12, Bladder Cancer 1626
- Chart 51-1, Vulvovaginal Infections 1677
- Chart 51-5, Cervical Cancer 1695
- Chart 51-7, Uterine Cancer 1697
- Chart 56-1, Pressure Injuries 1822
- Chart 56-5, Skin Cancer 1853
- Chart 58-6, Glaucoma 1911
- Chart 58-8, Cataract Formation 1915
- Chart 59-4, Hearing Loss 1945
- Chart 62-1, Ischemic Stroke 2035
- Chart 65-5, Amyotrophic Lateral Sclerosis 2131
- Chart 66-9, Development of Severe Illness due to COVID-19 in Adults 2172

25

Management of Patients with Complications from Heart Disease

LEARNING OUTCOMES

On completion of this chapter, the learner will be able to:

1. Recognize the etiology, pathophysiology, and clinical manifestations of the different classifications of heart failure.
2. Describe the medical management, including recommended pharmacologic treatments, for patients with heart failure.
3. Use the nursing process as a framework for care of the patient with heart failure.
4. Identify additional heart disease disorders and medical and nursing management of patients with complications from heart disease.

NURSING CONCEPT

Perfusion

GLOSSARY

anuria: urine output of less than 50 mL/24 h

ascites: an accumulation of serous fluid in the peritoneal cavity

cardiac resynchronization therapy (CRT): a treatment for heart failure in which a device paces both ventricles to synchronize contractions

congestive heart failure (CHF): a fluid overload condition (congestion) associated with heart failure

diastolic heart failure: the inability of the left ventricle of the heart to fill and pump sufficiently; term used to define a type of heart failure (*synonym:* Heart Failure with preserved Ejection Fraction [HFpEF])

ejection fraction (EF): percentage of blood volume in the ventricles at the end of diastole that is ejected during systole; a measurement of contractility

heart failure (HF): a clinical syndrome resulting from structural or functional cardiac disorders that impair the ability of a ventricle to fill or eject blood

Heart Failure with midrange Ejection Fraction (HFmrEF): clinical heart failure syndrome with left ventricular ejection fraction that is 40% to 49%

Heart Failure with preserved Ejection Fraction (HFpEF): clinical heart failure syndrome with left ventricular ejection fraction greater than or equal to 50% (*synonym:* diastolic heart failure)

Heart Failure with reduced Ejection Fraction (HFrEF): clinical heart failure syndrome with left ventricular ejection fraction less than or equal to 40% (*synonym:* systolic heart failure)

left-sided heart failure: inability of the left ventricle to fill or eject sufficient blood into the systemic circulation (*synonym:* left ventricular failure)

oliguria: diminished urine output; less than 0.5 mL/kg/h over at least 6 hours, or less than 400 mL in 24 hours

orthopnea: shortness of breath when lying flat

paroxysmal nocturnal dyspnea (PND): shortness of breath that occurs suddenly during sleep

pericardiocentesis: procedure that involves aspiration of fluid from the pericardial sac

pericardiotomy: surgically created opening of the pericardium

pulmonary edema: pathologic accumulation of fluid in the interstitial spaces and alveoli of the lungs causing severe respiratory distress

pulseless electrical activity (PEA): condition in which electrical activity is present on an electrocardiogram, but there is not a physiologically adequate pulse or blood pressure

pulsus paradoxus: systolic blood pressure that is more than 10 mm Hg lower during inhalation than during exhalation; difference is normally less than 10 mm Hg

right-sided heart failure: inability of the right ventricle to fill or eject sufficient blood into the pulmonary circulation (*synonym:* right ventricular failure)

systolic heart failure: inability of the heart to pump sufficiently because of an alteration in the ability of the heart to contract; term used to describe a type of heart failure (*synonym:* Heart Failure with reduced Ejection Fraction [HFrEF])

Cardiovascular disease is the leading cause of death in the United States (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention [CDC], 2017). Because of advancements in diagnostic and screening procedures, greater recognition of the importance of diligent self-care practices, and new discoveries in pharmacotherapies, it is now possible for a person diagnosed with heart disease to continue to live with a high quality of life years after being diagnosed. Despite this progress, heart disease remains a chronic and often progressive condition, associated with serious comorbidities, such as heart failure (Benjamin, Muntner, Alonso, et al., 2019). This chapter presents the complications most often associated with heart disease, including the medical management and nursing processes for managing patients with complications of cardiovascular disease.

HEART FAILURE

Heart failure (HF) is a clinical syndrome resulting from structural or functional cardiac disorders so that the heart is unable to pump enough blood to meet the body's metabolic demands or needs (American Heart Association [AHA], 2019a). The term *heart failure* indicates myocardial disease in which impaired contraction of the heart (systolic dysfunction) or filling of the heart (diastolic dysfunction) may cause pulmonary or systemic congestion. Some cases of HF are reversible, depending on the cause. Most often, HF is a chronic, progressive condition that is managed with lifestyle changes and medications to prevent episodes of acute decompensated heart failure. These episodes are characterized by increased symptoms of respiratory distress, decreased cardiac output (CO), and poor perfusion. These episodes are also associated with increased hospitalizations, increased health care costs, and decreased quality of life (Benjamin et al., 2019).

Approximately six million people in the United States have HF, and 870,000 new cases are diagnosed each year (AHA, 2019a). As more people live longer with chronic heart diseases, HF has become an epidemic that challenges the country's health care resources. HF is the most common reason for hospitalization of people older than 65 years and is the second most common reason for visits to a provider's office. Emergency department (ED) visits and hospital readmissions for this disorder are very common, despite efforts to prevent rehospitalizations. Over 20% of patients discharged after treatment for HF are readmitted to the hospital within 30 days, and nearly 50% are readmitted to the hospital within 6 months (O'Connor, 2017). The estimated economic burden caused by HF in the United States is more than \$30 billion annually in direct and indirect costs and is expected to continue to increase over time (CDC, 2017).

HF is more prevalent among African Americans and Hispanics than among Caucasians. The risk for having HF increases with advancing age. For adults over 60 years of age, HF is more prevalent among men than women (Benjamin et al., 2019). As typical for other major cardiovascular diseases and disorders, cigarette smoking, obesity, poorly managed diabetes, and metabolic syndrome are all risks for HF (Benjamin et al., 2019). The onset of HF is typically a morbid consequence of another disease or disorder, including coronary artery disease (CAD), hypertension, cardiomyopathy,

valvular disorders, and renal dysfunction with volume overload (McCance, Huether, Brashers, et al., 2019).

Atherosclerosis of the coronary arteries is a primary cause of HF, and CAD is found in the majority of patients with HF. Ischemia causes myocardial dysfunction because it deprives heart cells of oxygen and causes cellular damage. Myocardial infarction (MI) causes focal heart muscle necrosis, the death of myocardial cells, and a loss of contractility; the extent of the infarction correlates with the severity of HF. Revascularization of the coronary artery by a percutaneous coronary intervention (PCI) or by coronary artery bypass surgery (coronary artery bypass graft [CABG]) may improve myocardial oxygenation and ventricular function and prevent more extensive myocardial necrosis that can lead to HF (see Chapter 23).

Systemic or pulmonary hypertension increases afterload (resistance to ejection), increasing the cardiac workload and leading to the hypertrophy of myocardial muscle fibers. This can be considered a compensatory mechanism because it initially increases contractility. However, sustained hypertension eventually leads to changes that impair the heart's ability to fill properly during diastole, and the hypertrophied ventricles may dilate and fail (Norris, 2019; Yancy, Jessup, Bozkurt, et al., 2017).

Cardiomyopathy is a disease of the myocardium. The various types of cardiomyopathy lead to HF and arrhythmias. Dilated cardiomyopathy (DCM), the most common type of cardiomyopathy, causes diffuse myocyte necrosis and fibrosis, and commonly leads to progressive HF (Norris, 2019). DCM can be idiopathic (unknown cause), or it can result from an inflammatory process, such as myocarditis, or from a cytotoxic agent, such as alcohol or certain antineoplastic drugs. Usually, HF due to cardiomyopathy is chronic and progressive. However, cardiomyopathy and HF may resolve following removal of the causative agent. Genetic testing may be recommended for idiopathic cardiomyopathy (van der Meer, Gaggin, & Dec, 2019) (see Chapter 24).

Valvular heart disease is also a cause of HF. The valves ensure that blood flows in one direction. With valvular dysfunction, it becomes increasingly difficult for blood to move forward, increasing pressure within the heart and increasing cardiac workload, leading to HF (see Chapter 24).

Several systemic conditions, including progressive kidney failure, contribute to the development and severity of HF. Nearly 30% of patients with chronic HF also have chronic kidney disease (Benjamin et al., 2019). In addition, cardiac arrhythmias such as atrial fibrillation may either cause or result from HF; in both instances, the altered electrical stimulation impairs myocardial contraction and decreases the overall efficiency of myocardial function. Other factors, such as hypoxia, acidosis, and electrolyte abnormalities, can worsen myocardial function (Yancy et al., 2017).

Pathophysiology

Regardless of the etiology, the pathophysiology of HF results in similar changes and clinical manifestations. Significant myocardial dysfunction usually occurs before the patient experiences signs and symptoms of HF such as shortness of breath, edema, or fatigue.

As HF develops, the body activates neurohormonal compensatory mechanisms. These mechanisms represent the

body's attempt to cope with the HF and are responsible for the signs and symptoms that develop (Norris, 2019). Understanding these mechanisms is important because the treatment for HF is aimed at correcting them and relieving symptoms.

The most common type of HF is systolic HF, also called Heart Failure with reduced Ejection Fraction (HFrEF; see later discussion in Assessment and Diagnostic Findings). **Systolic heart failure** results in decreased blood ejected from the ventricle. The decreased blood flow is sensed by baroreceptors in the aortic and carotid bodies, and the sympathetic nervous system is then stimulated to release epinephrine and norepinephrine (Fig. 25-1). The purpose of this initial response is to increase heart rate and contractility and support the failing myocardium, but the continued response has multiple negative effects. Sympathetic stimulation causes vasoconstriction in the skin, gastrointestinal tract, and kidneys. A decrease in renal perfusion due to low CO and vasoconstriction then causes the release of renin by the kidneys. Renin converts the plasma protein angiotensinogen to angiotensin

I, which then circulates to the lungs. Angiotensin-converting enzyme (ACE) in the lumen of pulmonary blood vessels converts angiotensin I to angiotensin II, a potent vasoconstrictor, which then increases the blood pressure and afterload. Angiotensin II also stimulates the release of aldosterone from the adrenal cortex, resulting in sodium and fluid retention by the renal tubules and an increase in blood volume. These mechanisms lead to the fluid volume overload commonly seen in HF. Angiotensin, aldosterone, and other neurohormones (e.g., endothelin) lead to an increase in preload and afterload, which increases stress on the ventricular wall, causing an increase in cardiac workload. A counterregulatory mechanism is attempted through the release of natriuretic peptides. Atrial natriuretic peptide (ANP) and B-type natriuretic peptide (BNP; brain type) are released from the overdistended cardiac chambers. These substances promote vasodilation and diuresis. However, their effect is usually not strong enough to overcome the negative effects of the other mechanisms (Norris, 2019).

Physiology/Pathophysiology

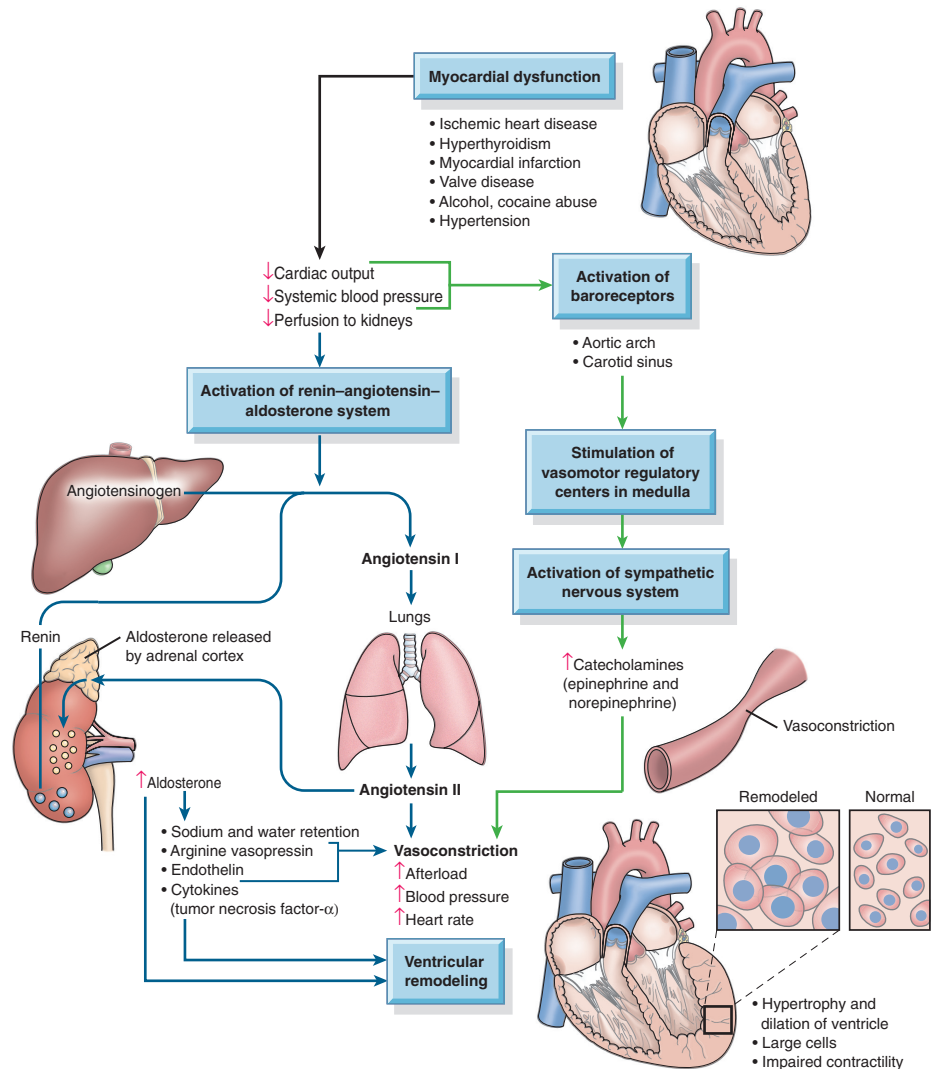


Figure 25-1 • The pathophysiology of heart failure. A decrease in cardiac output activates multiple neurohormonal mechanisms that ultimately result in the signs and symptoms of heart failure.

As the heart's workload increases, contractility of the myocardial muscle fibers decreases. Decreased contractility results in an increase in end-diastolic blood volume in the ventricle, stretching the myocardial muscle fibers and increasing the size of the ventricle (ventricular dilation). The heart compensates for the increased workload by increasing the thickness of the heart muscle (ventricular hypertrophy). Hypertrophy results in abnormal changes in the structure and function of myocardial cells, a process known as ventricular remodeling. Under the influence of neurohormones (e.g., angiotensin II), enlarged myocardial cells become dysfunctional and die early (a process called *apoptosis*), leaving the other, functional myocardial cells struggling to maintain CO.

As cardiac cells die and the heart muscle becomes fibrotic, **diastolic heart failure**, also called Heart Failure with preserved Ejection Fraction (HFpEF) (see later discussion in Assessment and Diagnostic Findings), can develop, leading to further dysfunction. A stiff ventricle resists filling, and less blood in the ventricles causes a further decrease in CO. All of these compensatory mechanisms of HF have been referred to as the "vicious cycle of heart failure" because low CO leads to multiple mechanisms that make the heart work harder, worsening the HF.

Clinical Manifestations

Many clinical manifestations are associated with HF (Chart 25-1). However, the cardinal manifestations of HF are dyspnea; fatigue, which may limit exercise tolerance; and fluid retention, which may lead to congestion, evidenced by pulmonary and peripheral edema (Yancy, Jessup, Bozkurt, et al., 2013). The signs and symptoms of HF are related to the ventricle that is most affected. **Left-sided heart failure**, also referred to as left ventricular failure because of the inability of the left ventricle to fill or eject sufficient blood into the systemic circulation, causes different manifestations than **right-sided heart failure**, also referred to as right ventricular failure because of the inability of the right ventricle to fill or eject sufficient blood into the pulmonary circulation. In chronic HF, particularly congestive heart failure, patients may have signs and symptoms of both left- and right-sided heart failure. The patient with pulmonary edema manifests signs and symptoms of acute decompensation, warranting expeditious treatment.

Left-Sided Heart Failure

Pulmonary congestion occurs when the left ventricle cannot effectively pump blood out of the ventricle into the aorta and the systemic circulation. The increased left ventricular end-diastolic blood volume increases the left ventricular end-diastolic pressure, which decreases blood flow from the left atrium into the left ventricle during diastole. The blood volume and pressure build up in the left atrium, decreasing flow through the pulmonary veins into the left atrium. Pulmonary venous blood volume and pressure increase in the lungs, forcing fluid from the pulmonary capillaries into the pulmonary tissues and alveoli, causing pulmonary interstitial edema and impaired gas exchange. The clinical manifestations of pulmonary congestion include dyspnea, cough, pulmonary crackles, and low oxygen saturation levels. An extra heart sound, the S_3 , or "ventricular gallop," may be detected on auscultation.



Chart
25-1



ASSESSMENT

Heart Failure

Be alert for the following signs and symptoms:

Congestion

- Dyspnea
- Orthopnea
- Paroxysmal nocturnal dyspnea
- Cough (recumbent or exertional)
- Pulmonary crackles that do not clear with cough
- Weight gain (rapid)
- Dependent edema
- Abdominal bloating or discomfort
- Ascites
- Jugular venous distention
- Sleep disturbance (anxiety or air hunger)
- Fatigue

Poor Perfusion/Low Cardiac Output

- Decreased exercise tolerance
- Muscle wasting or weakness
- Anorexia or nausea
- Unexplained weight loss
- Lightheadedness or dizziness
- Unexplained confusion or altered mental status
- Resting tachycardia
- Daytime oliguria with recumbent nocturia
- Cool or vasoconstricted extremities
- Pallor or cyanosis

Adapted from Colucci, W. S., & Dunlay, S. M. (2017). Clinical manifestations and diagnosis of advanced heart failure. *UpToDate*. Retrieved on 12/6/2019 at: www.uptodate.com/contents/clinical-manifestations-and-diagnosis-of-advanced-heart-failure; Dumitru, I. (2018). Heart failure. *Medscape*. Retrieved on 12/6/2019 at: www.emedicine.medscape.com/article/163062-overview

It is caused by abnormal ventricular filling (Colucci & Dunlay, 2017; Dumitru, 2018).

Dyspnea, or shortness of breath, may be precipitated by minimal to moderate activity (dyspnea on exertion [DOE]), yet dyspnea may also occur at rest. The patient may report **orthopnea**, difficulty breathing when lying flat. Patients with orthopnea may use multiple pillows to prop themselves up in bed, or they may sleep sitting up or in a high, reclined position. Some patients have sudden attacks of dyspnea at night, a condition known as **paroxysmal nocturnal dyspnea (PND)**. Fluid accumulating in the dependent extremities during the day may be reabsorbed into the circulating blood volume when the patient lies down. Because the impaired left ventricle cannot eject the increased circulating blood volume, the pressure in the pulmonary circulation increases, shifting fluid into the alveoli. The fluid-filled alveoli cannot exchange oxygen and carbon dioxide. Without sufficient oxygen, the patient experiences dyspnea and has difficulty sleeping (Colucci & Dunlay, 2017; Dumitru, 2018).

The cough associated with left ventricular failure is initially dry and nonproductive. Most often, patients complain of a dry hacking cough that may be mislabeled as asthma or chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD). Over time, the cough may begin to accumulate secretions. Large quantities of frothy sputum, sometimes pink or tan, may be

produced, indicating acute decompensated HF and pulmonary edema (Colucci & Dunlay, 2017; Dumitru, 2018).

Adventitious breath sounds may be heard in various areas of the lungs. Usually, bibasilar crackles that do not clear with coughing are detected in the early phase of left ventricular failure. As the failure worsens and pulmonary congestion increases, crackles may be auscultated throughout the lung fields. At this point, oxygen saturation may decrease.

In addition to pulmonary manifestations, the decreased amount of blood ejected from the left ventricle can lead to inadequate tissue perfusion. The diminished CO has widespread manifestations because not enough blood reaches all of the tissues and organs (low perfusion) to provide the necessary oxygen. The decrease in stroke volume (SV) can also stimulate the sympathetic nervous system to release catecholamines, which further impedes perfusion to many organs, including the kidneys.

As reduced CO and catecholamines decrease blood flow to the kidneys, urine output drops. Renal perfusion pressure falls, and the renin–angiotensin–aldosterone system is stimulated to increase blood pressure and intravascular volume. While the patient sleeps, the cardiac workload decreases, improving renal perfusion. This may cause **nocturia** (i.e., frequent urination at night) (Colucci & Dunlay, 2017; Dumitru, 2018).

As HF progresses, decreased output from the left ventricle may cause other symptoms. Decreased gastrointestinal perfusion causes altered digestion. Decreased brain perfusion causes dizziness, lightheadedness, confusion, restlessness, and anxiety due to decreased oxygenation and blood flow. As anxiety increases, so does dyspnea, increasing anxiety and creating a vicious cycle. Stimulation of the sympathetic system also causes the peripheral blood vessels to constrict, so the skin appears pale or ashen and feels cool and clammy.

A decrease in SV causes the sympathetic nervous system to increase the heart rate (tachycardia), often causing the patient to complain of palpitations. The peripheral pulses become weak. Without adequate CO, the body cannot respond to increased energy demands, and the patient becomes easily fatigued and has decreased activity tolerance. Fatigue also results from the increased energy expended in breathing and the insomnia that results from respiratory distress, coughing, and nocturia (Colucci & Dunlay, 2017; Dumitru, 2018).

Right-Sided Heart Failure

When the right ventricle fails, congestion in the peripheral tissues and the viscera predominates. This occurs because the right side of the heart cannot eject blood effectively and cannot accommodate all of the blood that normally returns to it from the venous circulation. Increased venous pressure leads to jugular venous distention (JVD) and increased capillary hydrostatic pressure throughout the venous system. Systemic clinical manifestations include dependent edema (edema of the lower extremities), **hepatomegaly** (enlargement of the liver), **ascites** (accumulation of fluid in the peritoneal cavity), and weight gain due to retention of fluid. Edema usually affects the feet and ankles and worsens when the patient stands or sits for a long period. The edema may decrease when the patient elevates the legs. Edema can gradually progress up

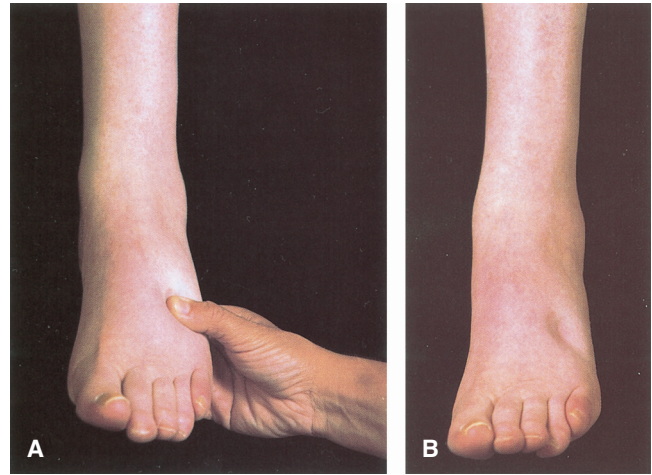


Figure 25-2 • Example of pitting edema. **A.** The nurse applies pressure to an area near the ankle. **B.** When the pressure is released, an indentation remains in the edematous tissue. Reprinted with permission from Bickley, L. S. (2017). *Bates' guide to physical examination and history taking* (12th ed.). Philadelphia, PA: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.

the legs and thighs and eventually into the external genitalia and lower trunk. Ascites is evidenced by increased abdominal girth and may accompany lower body edema or may be the only edema present. Sacral edema is common in patients who are on bed rest, because the sacral area is dependent. Pitting edema, in which indentations in the skin remain after even slight compression with the fingertips (Fig. 25-2), is generally obvious after retention of at least 4.5 kg (10 lb) of fluid (4.5 L).

Hepatomegaly and tenderness in the right upper quadrant of the abdomen result from venous engorgement of the liver. The increased pressure may interfere with the liver's ability to function (secondary liver dysfunction). As hepatic dysfunction progresses, increased pressure within the portal vessels may force fluid into the abdominal cavity, causing ascites. Ascites may increase pressure on the stomach and intestines and cause gastrointestinal distress. Hepatomegaly may also increase pressure on the diaphragm, causing respiratory distress.

Anorexia (loss of appetite), nausea, or abdominal pain may result from the venous engorgement and venous stasis within the abdominal organs. The generalized weakness that accompanies right-sided HF results from reduced CO and impaired circulation (Colucci & Dunlay, 2017; Dumitru, 2018).

Congestive Heart Failure

Right-sided heart failure can sometimes occur as a result of left-sided failure. The failure of these dual mechanisms is sometimes referred to as **congestive heart failure**. When the left ventricle fails, increased fluid pressure is transferred back through the lungs, leading to damage of the right side of the heart. When the right side loses pumping power, the blood backs up in the body's venous system. This may cause swelling or congestion in the legs, ankles, and swelling within the abdomen such as the GI tract and liver. Increased venous pressure may also lead to JVD and increased capillary hydrostatic pressure throughout the venous system. Edema may be present in the periphery as well as within the pulmonary

vascular bed. Without appropriate treatment, this may progress to pulmonary edema.



Pulmonary Edema

Pulmonary edema is an acute event, reflecting a breakdown of physiologic compensatory mechanisms; hence, it is sometimes referred to as acute decompensated heart failure. It can occur following acute MI or as an exacerbation of chronic HF. When the left ventricle begins to fail, blood backs up into the pulmonary circulation, causing pulmonary interstitial edema. This may occur quickly in some patients, a condition sometimes called *flash pulmonary edema*. Pulmonary edema can also develop slowly, especially when it is caused by noncardiac disorders such as kidney injury and other conditions that cause fluid overload. The left ventricle cannot handle the volume overload, and blood volume and pressure build up in the left atrium. The rapid increase in atrial pressure results in an acute increase in pulmonary venous pressure, which produces an increase in hydrostatic pressure that forces fluid out of the pulmonary capillaries and into the interstitial spaces and alveoli (Norris, 2019).

As a result of decreased cerebral oxygenation, the patient may become increasingly restless and anxious. Along with a sudden onset of breathlessness and a sense of suffocation, the patient may be tachypneic with low oxygen saturation levels. The skin and mucous membranes may be pale to cyanotic, and the hands may be cool and clammy. Tachycardia and JVD may be present. Incessant coughing may occur, producing increasing quantities of foamy sputum. The patient may become progressively confused. The situation demands emergent action before oxygenation and perfusion levels become critical.

Assessment and Diagnostic Findings

For many years, the severity of HF was classified solely according to the patient's symptoms, using the New York Heart Association (NYHA) classification of HF. This classification system, which is still in widespread use, is described in Table 25-1. The American College of Cardiology and the American Heart Association (ACC/AHA) have developed another HF classification system (Yancy et al., 2013). This system, described in Table 25-2, takes into consideration the natural history and progressive nature of HF. The ACC/AHA periodically issues evidence-based guidelines for patients with HF or at high-risk of having HF, using this classification system as a framework for treatment (Yancy et al., 2013; Yancy, Jessup, Bozkurt, et al., 2016; Yancy et al., 2017).

HF may go undetected until the patient presents with signs and symptoms of pulmonary and peripheral edema. Some of the physical signs that suggest HF may also occur with other diseases, such as kidney injury and COPD; therefore, diagnostic testing is essential to confirm a diagnosis of HF.

Assessment of ventricular function is an essential part of the initial diagnostic workup. An echocardiogram is performed to determine the ejection fraction (EF), identify anatomic features such as structural abnormalities and valve malfunction, and confirm the diagnosis of HF. The **ejection fraction** is a measure of ventricular contractility; it is the percentage of the end-diastolic blood volume that is ejected

TABLE 25-1 New York Heart Association (NYHA) Classification of Heart Failure

Classification	Signs and Symptoms
I	No limitation of physical activity Ordinary activity does not cause undue fatigue, palpitation, or dyspnea.
II	Slight limitation of physical activity Comfortable at rest, but ordinary physical activity causes fatigue, palpitation, or dyspnea.
III	Marked limitation of physical activity Comfortable at rest, but less than ordinary activity causes fatigue, palpitation, or dyspnea.
IV	Unable to carry out any physical activity without discomfort Symptoms of cardiac insufficiency at rest If any physical activity is undertaken, discomfort is increased.

Adapted from Yancy, C. W., Jessup, M., Bozkurt, B., et al. (2013). 2013 ACCF/AHA Guideline for the management of heart failure. A report of the American College of Cardiology Foundation/American Heart Association Task Force on Practice Guidelines. *Circulation*, 128(16), e240–e327.

with each heartbeat. An expected EF is 55% to 65% of the ventricular volume; the ventricle does not completely empty between contractions (Wiegand, 2017).

There are two recognized main types of left-sided HF, with a third, emerging category. In **heart failure with reduced ejection fraction (HFrEF)**, or systolic heart failure, the left ventricle loses the ability to contract effectively, manifesting as EFs of less than 40%, reflecting decreased CO and pump failure (Yancy et al., 2017).

Heart failure with preserved ejection fraction (HFpEF), or diastolic heart failure, is diagnosed when the left ventricular function measures greater than or equal to 50%, yet the ventricle loses its ability to relax due to myocardial stiffness. Because of the noncompliance of the ventricular wall, the chamber is unable to fill at normal capacity during the relaxation phase of diastole (Yancy et al., 2017).

Heart failure with midrange ejection fraction (HFmrEF) is a third and emerging classification category, with EFs typically between 40% and 49% (van der Meer et al., 2019).

Diagnosing a patient with HFpEF is more challenging than diagnosing a patient with HFrEF, because the diagnosis of HFpEF is a *diagnosis of exclusion*. That is, it is made by excluding other potential noncardiac causes suggestive of HF. The incidence of HFpEF is increasing and is becoming more commonplace among older adult women with a history of hypertension; indeed, hypertension is the most common underlying cause of HFpEF. Comorbid conditions such as obesity, CAD, diabetes, atrial fibrillation, and hyperlipidemia are also common in patients with HFpEF (Yancy et al., 2013).

In addition to the echocardiogram, a chest x-ray and a 12-lead electrocardiogram (ECG) are obtained to assist in the diagnosis. Laboratory studies usually performed during the initial workup include serum electrolytes, blood urea nitrogen (BUN), creatinine, liver function tests, thyroid-stimulating hormone, complete blood count (CBC), BNP, and routine urinalysis. The results of these laboratory studies assist in determining the underlying cause and can also

TABLE 25-2 American College of Cardiology and American Heart Association (ACC/AHA) Classification of Heart Failure

Classification	Criteria	Patient Characteristics	Treatment Recommendations for Appropriate Patients
Stage A	Patients at high risk for developing left ventricular dysfunction but without structural heart disease or symptoms of HF	Hypertension Atherosclerotic disease Diabetes Metabolic syndrome	Heart healthy lifestyle Risk factor control of hypertension, lipids, diabetes, obesity
Stage B	Patients with left ventricular dysfunction or structural heart disease who have not developed symptoms of HF	History of myocardial infarction Left ventricular hypertrophy Low ejection fraction	Implement stage A recommendations, plus: • ACE inhibitor, or ARB, or ARNI for low EF or history of MI • Beta-blocker • Statin
Stage C	Patients with left ventricular dysfunction or structural heart disease with current or prior symptoms of heart disease	Shortness of breath Fatigue Decreased exercise tolerance	Implement stage A and B recommendations, plus: • Diuretics • Aldosterone antagonist • Sodium restriction • Implantable defibrillator • Cardiac resynchronization therapy
Stage D	Patients with refractory end-stage HF requiring specialized interventions	Symptoms despite maximal medical therapy Recurrent hospitalizations	Implement stage A, B, and C recommendations, plus: • Fluid restriction • End-of-life care • Extraordinary measures: • Inotropes • Cardiac transplantation • Mechanical support

ACE, angiotensin-converting enzyme; ARB, angiotensin receptor blocker; ARNI, angiotensin receptor-neprilysin inhibitor, EF, ejection fraction; HF, heart failure; MI, myocardial infarction.

Adapted from Yancy, C. W., Jessup, M., Bozkurt, B., et al. (2013). 2013 ACCF/AHA guideline for the diagnosis and management of heart failure: A report of the American College of Cardiology Foundation/American Heart Association Task Force on Practice Guidelines. *Circulation*, 128(16), e240–e327; Yancy, C. W., Jessup, M., Bozkurt, B., et al. (2016). ACC/AHA/HFSA focused update on new pharmacological therapy for heart failure: An update of the 2013 ACCF/AHA guideline for the management of heart failure: A report of the American College of Cardiology Foundation/American Heart Association Task Force on Clinical Practice Guidelines and the Heart Failure Society of America. *Circulation*, 134(13), e282–e293.

be used to establish a baseline to assess effects of treatment. The BNP level is a key diagnostic indicator of HF; high levels are a sign of high cardiac filling pressure and can aid in both the diagnosis and management of HF; in particular, rising levels may suggest an acute exacerbation of HF (Yancy et al., 2013). BNP levels are best used for diagnostic purposes when there is a baseline measurement and a measurement obtained at the time of treatment (e.g., hospital discharge) to help in determining a posttreatment prognosis (Yancy et al., 2017).

Medical Management

The prognosis for patients with HF has improved with the use of evidence-based protocols for patient management. Specific interventions are based on the stage of HF (Yancy et al., 2013; Yancy et al., 2016; Yancy et al., 2017). The management goals of HF include the following (Cyrille & Patel, 2017):

- Improvement of cardiac function with optimal pharmacologic management
- Reduction of symptoms and improvement of functional status
- Stabilization of patient condition and lowering of the risk of hospitalization
- Delay of the progression of HF and extension of life expectancy
- Promotion of a lifestyle conducive to cardiac health

Treatment options vary according to the severity of the patient's condition, comorbidities, and cause of the HF, and may include oral and intravenous (IV) medications, lifestyle modifications, supplemental oxygen, and surgical interventions, including implantation of cardiac devices, and cardiac transplantation (see Chapter 24).

Managing the patient with HF begins with providing comprehensive education and counseling to the patient and family. The patient and family must understand the nature of HF and the importance of their participation in the treatment regimen, including side and adverse effects of pharmacologic therapies. Lifestyle recommendations include restriction of dietary sodium; avoidance of smoking, including second-hand smoke; avoidance of excessive fluid and alcohol intake; weight reduction when indicated; and regular exercise. The patient must also know how to recognize signs and symptoms that need to be reported to the primary provider.

Pharmacologic Therapy

Several types of medications are routinely prescribed for patients with HF. The cornerstone of therapy for patients with HFrEF (systolic HF), which is the most common type of HF, includes a diuretic, an angiotensin system blocker, and a beta-blocker (Table 25-3). Many of these medications, particularly angiotensin system blockers and beta-blockers, improve symptoms and extend survival. Others, such as diuretics, improve symptoms but may not affect survival

TABLE 25-3 Select Medications Used to Treat Heart Failure

Medication	Therapeutic Effects	Key Nursing Considerations
Diuretics		
<i>Loop diuretics:</i> furosemide	↓ Fluid volume overload ↓ Signs and symptoms of HF	Observe for electrolyte abnormalities, renal dysfunction, diuretic resistance, and ↓ BP. Carefully monitor I&O and daily weight (see Chart 25-2).
<i>Thiazide diuretics:</i> metolazone hydrochlorothiazide		
<i>Aldosterone antagonists:</i> spironolactone	Improves HF symptoms in advanced HF	Observe for ↑ serum K ⁺ , ↓ serum Na ⁺ .
Angiotensin System Blockers		
<i>ACE Inhibitors:</i> lisinopril enalapril	↓ BP and ↓ afterload Relieves signs and symptoms of HF Prevents progression of HF	Observe for symptomatic ↓ BP, ↑ serum K ⁺ , cough, and worsening renal function.
<i>ARBs:</i> valsartan losartan	↓ BP and ↓ afterload Relieves signs and symptoms of HF Prevents progression of HF	
<i>ARNI:</i> sacubitril-valsartan	↓ BP and ↓ afterload ↓ Fluid volume overload ↓ Signs and symptoms of HF Prevents progression of HF	Observe for symptomatic ↓ BP, ↑ serum K ⁺ , cough, dizziness, and renal failure.
Beta-Adrenergic-Blocking Agents (Beta-Blockers)		
carvedilol bisoprolol metoprolol	Dilates blood vessels and ↓ afterload ↓ Signs and symptoms of HF Improves exercise capacity	Observe for ↓ heart rate, symptomatic ↓ BP, dizziness, and fatigue.
Ivabradine	Decreases rate of conduction through the SA node	Observe for ↓ heart rate, symptomatic ↓ BP, dizziness, and fatigue.
Hydralazine-isosorbide dinitrate	Dilates blood vessels ↓ BP and ↓ afterload	Observe for symptomatic ↓ BP.
Digitalis digoxin	Improves cardiac contractility ↓ Signs and symptoms of HF	Observe for ↓ heart rate and digitalis toxicity.

ACE, angiotensin-converting enzyme; ARB, angiotensin receptor blocker; ARNI, angiotensin receptor-neprilysin inhibitor; BP, blood pressure; ↓, decreases; HF, heart failure; ↑, increases; I&O, input and output; K⁺, potassium; Na⁺, sodium; SA, sinoatrial.

Adapted from Burchum, J. R., & Rosenthal, L. D. (2019). *Lehne's pharmacology for nursing care* (9th ed.). St. Louis, MO: Elsevier.

(Meyer, 2019b). The patient with HFpEF (diastolic HF) may be prescribed a diuretic, most commonly an aldosterone antagonist (see Table 25-3), and may also be prescribed an angiotensin system blocker and/or a beta-blocker and find symptomatic relief; however, these drugs are not necessarily associated with improved survival in those patients (Borlaug & Colucci, 2019). Target doses for these medications and alternative medications for treating heart failure are identified in the ACC/AHA guidelines. Nurses, primary providers, and pharmacists work collaboratively toward achieving effective dosing of these medications (Yancy et al., 2013; Yancy et al., 2016; Yancy et al., 2017).

Diuretics

Diuretics are prescribed to remove excess extracellular fluid by increasing diuresis in patients with signs and symptoms of fluid overload. ACC/AHA guidelines advocate using the smallest dose of diuretic necessary to control fluid volume (Yancy et al., 2013). The type and dose of diuretic prescribed depend on clinical signs and symptoms and renal function. Careful patient monitoring and dose adjustments are necessary to balance the effectiveness of these medications with the side effects (Chart 25-2). Loop, thiazide, and aldosterone-blocking diuretics may be prescribed; these medications differ

in their site of action in the kidney and their effects on renal electrolyte excretion and reabsorption.

Loop diuretics, such as furosemide, inhibit sodium and chloride reabsorption mainly in the ascending loop of Henle. Patients with HF and with severe volume overload are generally treated with a loop diuretic first (Burchum & Rosenthal, 2019). *Thiazide diuretics*, such as metolazone, inhibit sodium and chloride reabsorption in the early distal tubules. Both of these classes of diuretics increase potassium excretion; therefore, patients treated with these medications must have their serum potassium levels closely monitored. Diuretics can also lead to orthostatic hypotension and kidney injury. Both a loop and a thiazide diuretic may be used in patients with severe HF who are unresponsive to a single diuretic. The need for diuretics can be decreased if the patient avoids excessive fluid intake (e.g., more than 2000 mL/day) and adheres to a low sodium diet (e.g., no more than 2 g/day).

Aldosterone antagonists, such as spironolactone, are potassium-sparing diuretics that block the effects of aldosterone in the distal tubule and collecting duct (Yancy et al., 2016). As noted previously, they are frequently prescribed for patients with HFpEF. Serum creatinine and potassium levels are monitored frequently (e.g., within the first week and then



Chart
25-2

PHARMACOLOGY

Administering and Monitoring Diuretic Therapy

When nursing care involves diuretic therapy for conditions such as heart failure, the nurse needs to administer the medication and monitor the patient's response carefully, as follows:

- Prior to administration of the diuretic, check laboratory results for electrolyte depletion, especially potassium, sodium, and magnesium.
- Prior to administration of the diuretic, check for signs and symptoms of volume depletion, such as orthostatic hypotension, lightheadedness, and dizziness.
- Administer the diuretic at a time conducive to the patient's lifestyle—for example, early in the day to avoid nocturia.
- Monitor urine output during the hours after administration, and analyze intake, output, and daily weights to assess response.
- Monitor blood pressure for orthostatic changes.
- Continue to monitor serum electrolytes for depletion. Replace potassium with increased oral intake of food rich in potassium or potassium supplements. Replace magnesium as needed.
- Monitor for hyperkalemia in patients receiving potassium-sparing diuretics.
- Continue to assess for signs of volume depletion.
- Monitor creatinine for increased levels indicative of diuretic-induced renal dysfunction.
- Monitor for elevated uric acid level and signs and symptoms of gout.
- Assess lungs sounds and edema to evaluate response to therapy.
- Monitor for adverse reactions such as arrhythmias.
- Assist patients to manage urinary frequency and urgency associated with diuretic therapy.

Adapted from Burchum, J. R., & Rosenthal, L. D. (2019). *Lehne's pharmacology for nursing care* (10th ed.). St. Louis, MO: Elsevier.

every 4 weeks) when spironolactone is first given. These drugs are not prescribed for patients with an elevated serum creatinine.

Loop diuretics are administered IV for exacerbations of HF when rapid diuresis is necessary, as when pulmonary edema is present (see later discussion). Diuretics improve the patient's symptoms, provided that renal function is adequate. As HF progresses, cardiorenal syndrome may develop or worsen. Cardiorenal syndrome is a type of prerenal acute kidney injury characterized by a disruption in adequate blood flow to the kidneys. Patients with this syndrome are resistant to diuretics and may require other interventions to deal with congestive signs and symptoms.

Angiotensin System Blockers

Angiotensin system blockers include classes of medications such as the ACE inhibitors, angiotensin receptor blockers (ARBs), and angiotensin receptor-neprilysin inhibitors (ARNIs).

Angiotensin-Converting Enzyme Inhibitors

ACE inhibitors, such as lisinopril, have been found to relieve clinical manifestations of HF and significantly decrease mortality and morbidity in patients with HFrEF. Specifically, they slow the progression of HF, improve exercise tolerance,

and decrease the number of hospitalizations in patients with HFrEF (Yancy et al., 2013; Yancy et al., 2017). ACE inhibitors are also appropriate for hypertension management in patients with HFpEF (Yancy et al., 2017). Available as oral and IV medications, ACE inhibitors promote vasodilation and diuresis, ultimately decreasing both afterload and preload. Vasodilation reduces resistance to left ventricular ejection of blood, diminishing the heart's workload and improving ventricular emptying. ACE inhibitors decrease the secretion of aldosterone, a hormone that causes the kidneys to retain sodium and water. ACE inhibitors also promote renal excretion of sodium and fluid (while retaining potassium), thereby reducing left ventricular filling pressure and decreasing pulmonary congestion. These agents are also recommended for prevention of HF in patients at risk due to vascular disease and diabetes (Yancy et al., 2013; Yancy et al., 2017).

Patients receiving ACE inhibitors are monitored for hypotension, hyperkalemia (increased potassium in the blood), and alterations in renal function, especially if they are also receiving diuretics. Because ACE inhibitors cause the kidneys to retain potassium, the patient who is also receiving a loop diuretic or a thiazide diuretic may not need to take oral potassium supplements. However, the patient receiving a potassium-sparing diuretic, such as an aldosterone antagonist, which does not cause potassium loss with diuresis, must be carefully monitored for hyperkalemia. ACE inhibitors may be discontinued if the potassium level remains greater than 5.5 mEq/L or if the serum creatinine rises.

An adverse effect of ACE inhibitors includes a dry, persistent cough that may not respond to cough suppressants due to the inhibition of the enzyme kininase, which inactivates bradykinin. The nurse should carefully assess any cough in a patient taking an ACE inhibitor, as this symptom can also indicate a worsening of ventricular function and failure. In less than 1% of patients, ACE inhibitors may cause an allergic reaction accompanied by angioedema. This reaction tends to occur more frequently in African Americans and women (Yancy et al., 2016; Yancy et al., 2017). If angioedema affects the oropharyngeal area and impairs breathing, the ACE inhibitor must be stopped immediately and appropriate emergency care must be provided.

If the patient cannot continue taking an ACE inhibitor because of development of cough, an elevated creatinine level, or hyperkalemia, an ARB, an ARNI, or a combination of hydralazine and isosorbide dinitrate is prescribed (see Table 25-3).

Angiotensin Receptor Blockers

Whereas ACE inhibitors block the conversion of angiotensin I to angiotensin II, ARBs, such as valsartan, block the vasoconstricting effects of angiotensin II at the angiotensin II receptors. ARBs are commonly prescribed as an alternative to ACE inhibitors, as they are associated with reduced morbidity and mortality in patients with HFrEF and can provide symptomatic relief in patients with HFpEF who are intolerant of ACE inhibitors (Yancy et al., 2013; Yancy et al., 2017). ARBs do not inhibit kininase; therefore, ARBs are not associated with the bothersome cough that occurs with some patients prescribed an ACE inhibitor.

Angiotensin Receptor-Nepilysin Inhibitors

An ARNI combines an ARB with a neprilysin inhibitor. Neprilysin is an enzyme that breaks down natriuretic peptides. Participants with HFrEF enrolled in clinical trials who were prescribed an ARNI demonstrated a significant reduction in cardiovascular death or hospitalization as compared with participants prescribed an ACE inhibitor (Meyer, 2019b). Based on these findings, updated ACC/AHA guidelines advocate prescribing an ARNI as first-line angiotensin system blocker therapy for most patients with symptomatic HFrEF. However, an ARNI is reportedly a costlier option than most ACE inhibitors and ARBs, which may preclude its practical use. For patients unable to take an ARNI, an ACE inhibitor or ARB is a good alternative. An ARNI should not be administered concurrently or within 36 hours of an ACE inhibitor as concomitant dosing with both agents is associated with angioedema (Yancy et al., 2016; Yancy et al., 2017). Adverse effects associated with use of an ARNI are similar to those associated with ACE inhibitor or ARB use; therefore, the nurse should assess for hypotension, renal insufficiency, and angioedema in patients taking an ARNI (Yancy et al., 2016; Yancy et al., 2017). The first U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) approved ARNI for use in patients with HF is sacubitril-valsartan.

Beta-Blockers

Beta-blockers block the adverse effects of the sympathetic nervous system. They relax blood vessels, lower blood pressure, decrease afterload, and decrease cardiac workload. Beta-blockers, such as carvedilol, have been found to improve functional status and reduce mortality and morbidity in patients with HF (Burchum & Rosenthal, 2019). In addition, beta-blockers have been recommended for patients with asymptomatic HFrEF to prevent progression and the onset of symptoms of HF, even if patients do not have a history of MI. The therapeutic effects of these drugs may not be seen for several weeks or even months (Yancy et al., 2013; Yancy et al., 2017).

Beta-blockers can produce a number of side effects, including dizziness, hypotension, bradycardia, fatigue, and depression. Side effects are most common in the initial few weeks of treatment. Because of the potential for side effects, beta-blockers are started at a low dose. The dose is titrated up slowly (every few weeks), with close monitoring after each dosage increase. Nurses educate patients about potential symptoms during the early phase of treatment and stress that adjustment to the drug may take several weeks. Nurses must also provide support to patients going through this symptom-provoking phase of treatment. Because beta-blockade can cause bronchiole constriction, these drugs are used with caution in patients with a history of bronchospastic diseases such as asthma.

Ivabradine

Ivabradine is a new agent that is a hyperpolarization-activated cyclic nucleotide channel blocker. It is a medication with unique electrophysiologic effects, characterized by its negative chronotropic effect on the sinoatrial node, thereby decreasing the heart rate without targeting the neurohormonal system. It is indicated as an adjunct agent to

beta-blockers in patients with symptomatic HFrEF and with high resting heart rates of at least 70 bpm (Koruth, Lala, Pinney, et al., 2017). It may also be beneficial for patients with HFrEF who cannot tolerate beta-blockers (Yancy et al., 2017). Adverse effects of ivabradine include bradycardia resulting in dizziness and fatigue; it is also associated with an increased risk of atrial fibrillation (Koruth et al., 2017).

Hydralazine and Isosorbide Dinitrate

A combination of hydralazine and isosorbide dinitrate may be an alternative medication for patients who cannot take any of the three angiotensin system blockers (i.e., ACE inhibitor, ARB, and ARNI), so long as the patient's systolic BP is at least 90 mm Hg. Nitrates (e.g., isosorbide dinitrate) cause venous dilation, which reduces the amount of blood return to the heart and lowers preload. Hydralazine lowers systemic vascular resistance and left ventricular afterload. Hydralazine-isosorbide dinitrate is associated with decreased hospitalizations and improved survival in patients with HFrEF; however, these improvements are not as robust as those associated with angiotensin system blockers (Meyer, 2019b; Yancy et al., 2017). Adverse effects may include hypotension, and rarely, a lupus-type reaction (Meyer, 2019b).

Digitalis

For many years, digitalis (i.e., digoxin) was considered an essential agent for the treatment of HF. With the introduction of newer medications, it is not prescribed as often. Digoxin increases the force of myocardial contraction and slows conduction through the atrioventricular node. It improves contractility, increasing left ventricular output. Although the use of digoxin does not result in decreased mortality rates among patients with HFrEF, it can be effective in decreasing the symptoms of HF and may help prevent hospitalization (Yancy et al., 2013). Patients with renal dysfunction and older patients should receive smaller doses of digoxin, as it is excreted through the kidneys.

A key concern associated with digoxin therapy is digitalis toxicity. Clinical manifestations of toxicity include anorexia, nausea, visual disturbances, confusion, and bradycardia. The serum potassium level is monitored because the effect of digoxin is enhanced in the presence of hypokalemia and digoxin toxicity may occur. A serum digoxin level is obtained if the patient's renal function changes or there are symptoms of toxicity.



Intravenous Infusions

IV inotropes (e.g., dopamine, dobutamine, milrinone) increase the force of myocardial contraction; as such, they may be indicated for hospitalized patients with pulmonary edema (i.e., acute decompensated HF). These agents are used for patients who do not respond to routine pharmacologic therapy and are reserved for patients with severe ventricular dysfunction, low blood pressure, or impaired perfusion and evidence of significantly depressed CO, with or without congestion. They are used with caution, as some studies have associated their use with increased mortality (Malotte, Saguros, & Groninger, 2018; Yancy et al., 2013). Patients usually require admission to the intensive care unit (ICU) and may

also have hemodynamic monitoring with a pulmonary artery catheter or alternative technology (see Chapter 21). Hemodynamic data are used to assess cardiac function and volume status and to guide therapy with inotropes, vasodilators, and diuretics (Urden, Stacy, & Lough, 2018). Patients with end-stage HF who cannot be weaned from IV inotropes may be candidates for continuous therapy at home (Malotte et al., 2018).

Dopamine

Dopamine is a vasopressor given to increase BP and myocardial contractility. Given at low doses, a dopamine infusion may be helpful as an adjunct therapy along with loop diuretics in improving diuresis, preserving renal function, and improving renal blood flow (Yancy et al., 2013).

Dobutamine

Dobutamine is given to patients with significant left ventricular dysfunction and hypoperfusion. A catecholamine, dobutamine stimulates the beta-1 adrenergic receptors. Its major action is to increase cardiac contractility and renal perfusion to enhance urine output. However, it also increases the heart rate and can precipitate ectopic beats and tachyarrhythmias (Burchum & Rosenthal, 2019).

Milrinone

Milrinone is a phosphodiesterase inhibitor that leads to an increase in intracellular calcium within myocardial cells, increasing their contractility (Ayres & Maani, 2019). This agent also promotes vasodilation, resulting in decreased preload and afterload and reduced cardiac workload. Milrinone is administered IV to patients with severe HF, including patients who are waiting for heart transplantation (see Chapter 24). Because the drug causes vasodilation, the patient's blood pressure is monitored prior to administration; if the patient is hypovolemic, the blood pressure could drop quickly. The major side effects are hypotension and increased ventricular arrhythmias. Blood pressure and ECG are monitored closely during and following infusions of milrinone.

Vasodilators

Intravenous vasodilators such as IV nitroglycerin, nitropruside, or nesiritide may enhance symptom relief for acutely decompensated HF (Yancy et al., 2013). Their use is contraindicated in patients who are hypotensive. Blood pressure is continually assessed in patients receiving IV vasodilator infusions.

Adjunct Medications for Heart Failure

The importance of ensuring that patients with hypertension take prescribed antihypertensive agents as prescribed is of paramount importance (see Chapter 27 for further discussion of antihypertensive medications). Target blood pressures should be less than 130/80 mm Hg. Maintaining BPs at these levels is associated with reduced likelihood of morbid progression to symptomatic HF in patients who are asymptomatic. It is also associated with improved morbidity in patients who are symptomatic with both HFrEF and HFpEF (Yancy et al., 2017).

Anemia is independently associated with HF disease severity, and iron deficiency appears to be uniquely associated with reduced exercise capacity. IV iron repletion in patients with HF may improve functional capacity and quality of life; however, there is mixed evidence to support the use of oral iron supplementation. Erythropoietin-stimulating agents, such as darbepoetin alfa, are not recommended in patients with both HF and anemia as a risk of thromboembolic events associated with their use has been observed during clinical trials (Yancy et al., 2017).

Anticoagulants may be prescribed, especially if the patient has a history of atrial fibrillation or a thromboembolic event. Antiarrhythmic drugs such as amiodarone may be prescribed for patients with arrhythmias, along with an evaluation for device therapy with an implantable cardioverter defibrillator (ICD) (see Chapter 22). Medications to manage hyperlipidemia (e.g., statins) are also routinely prescribed, in tandem with guidance on nutritional therapy (see following section). It is recommended that patients with HF avoid nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs) such as ibuprofen because the risk of decreased renal perfusion is higher, especially in older adults (Schwartz, Schmader, Hanlon, et al., 2018).

Adjunct Therapies for Heart Failure

Additional therapies that may be indicated in the treatment of patients with HF include nutritional therapy, supplemental oxygen, management of sleep disorders, and procedural or surgical interventions.

Nutritional Therapy

Following a low sodium (no more than 2 g/day) diet and avoiding excessive fluid intake are usually recommended, although studies differ regarding the effectiveness of sodium restriction (Yancy et al., 2013). Decreasing dietary sodium reduces fluid retention and the symptoms of peripheral and pulmonary congestion. The purpose of sodium restriction is to decrease the amount of circulating blood volume, which decreases myocardial work. A balance should be achieved between the patient's ability to adhere to the diet and the recommended guidelines.

Nutritional supplements, such as vitamins and antioxidants, are not recommended for patients with HF as no benefits are associated with their use. Omega-3 polyunsaturated fatty acid (PUFA) supplementation is associated with decreased fatal cardiovascular events and is recommended for patients with either HFrEF or HFpEF, unless contraindicated (Yancy et al., 2013).

Any change in eating patterns should consider good nutrition as well as the patient's likes, dislikes, and cultural food patterns. Patient adherence is important because dietary indiscretions may result in exacerbations of HF symptoms. However, behavioral changes in eating patterns are difficult for many patients to achieve.

Supplemental Oxygen

Oxygen therapy may become necessary as HF progresses based on the degree of pulmonary congestion and resulting hypoxia. Some patients require supplemental oxygen only during periods of activity (see Chapter 20 for further discussion of oxygen delivery systems).

Management of Sleep Disorders

Sleep disorders, including sleep apnea, are common in patients with HF. It is estimated that 61% of patients with HF have either central or obstructive sleep apnea (OSA). A formal sleep study should be performed. Continuous positive airway pressure (CPAP) might be recommended if results from the sleep study suggest OSA (see Chapter 18). CPAP has been shown to improve sleep quality, reduce apneic episodes and excessive daytime sleepiness, and improve nocturnal oxygenation in patients with OSA and HF (Yancy et al., 2017).

Procedural and Surgical Interventions

A number of procedures and surgical approaches may benefit patients with HF. If the patient has underlying CAD, coronary artery revascularization with PCI or coronary artery bypass surgery (see Chapter 23) may be considered. Ventricular function may improve in some patients when coronary flow is increased.

Patients with HF are at high risk for arrhythmias, and sudden cardiac death is common among patients with advanced HF. In patients with severe left ventricular dysfunction and the possibility of life-threatening arrhythmias, placement of an ICD can prevent sudden cardiac death and extend survival (see Chapter 22). Candidates for an ICD include those with an EF less than 35%, including those with and without a history of ventricular arrhythmias (Yancy et al., 2013).

Patients with HF who do not improve with standard therapy may benefit from **cardiac resynchronization therapy (CRT)**. CRT involves the use of a biventricular pacemaker to treat electrical conduction defects and to synchronize ventricular contractions. A prolonged QRS duration on ECG indicates left bundle branch block, which is a type of delayed conduction that is frequently seen in patients with HF. This problem results in asynchronous conduction and contraction of the right and left ventricles, which can further decrease EF (Yancy et al., 2013). The use of a pacing device with leads placed in the right atrium, right ventricle, and left ventricular cardiac vein can synchronize the contractions of the right and left ventricles (Fig. 25-3). This intervention improves CO, optimizes myocardial energy consumption, reduces mitral regurgitation, and slows the ventricular remodeling process. For patients with a CRT, improvement of left ventricular EF is associated with reduced rates of ventricular arrhythmias. There are combination devices available for patients who require CRT and an ICD (Gulati & Udelson, 2018). See Chapter 22 for further discussion of care of patients with pacemakers, CRT, and ICDs.

Ultrafiltration is an alternative intervention for patients with severe fluid overload. It is reserved for patients with advanced HF who are resistant to diuretic therapy (Yancy et al., 2013). A dual-lumen central IV catheter is placed, and the patient's blood is circulated through a small bedside filtration machine. Liters of excess fluid and plasma are removed slowly from the patient's intravascular circulating volume over a number of hours. The patient's output of filtration fluid, blood pressure, and hemoglobin (analyzed for hemoglobin concentration) are monitored as indicators of volume status.

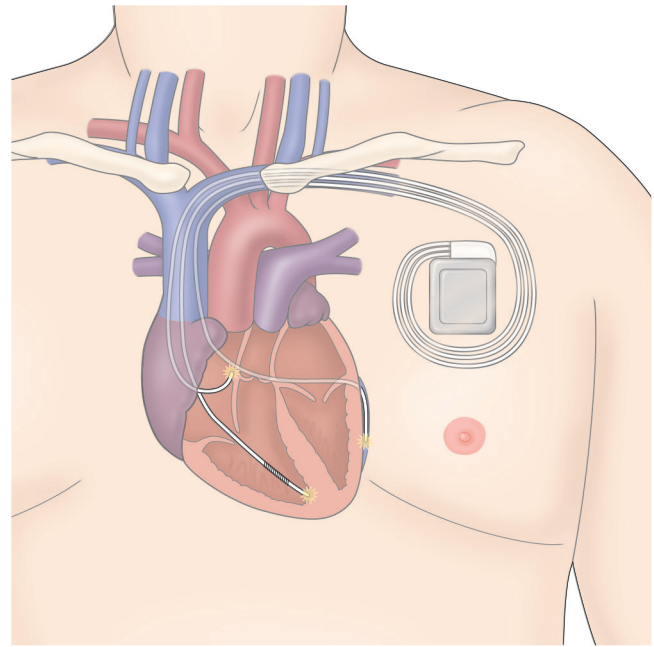


Figure 25-3 • Cardiac resynchronization therapy. To pace both ventricles, pacemaker leads are placed in the right atrium and right ventricle; a third lead is threaded through the coronary sinus into a lateral vein on the wall of the left ventricle.

Research on ultrafiltration is ongoing, and targets comparisons of its efficacy to diuretics and the optimal fluid removal target (Costanzo, 2019).

For some patients with end-stage HF, cardiac transplantation is one of the few options for long-term survival. Patients with ACC/AHA stage D HF who may be eligible are referred for consideration of transplantation. Some of these patients require mechanical circulatory assistance with an implanted ventricular assist device as a bridge therapy to cardiac transplantation. A left ventricular assist device may also be implanted as *destination therapy* (permanent therapy) for select patients (Yancy et al., 2013).



Gerontologic Considerations

Several normal age-related changes increase the frequency of HF: increased systolic blood pressure, increased ventricular wall thickness, and increased myocardial fibrosis. There are a number of reasons that older adults may need to be hospitalized with HF (Albert, Barnason, Deswal, et al., 2015). Older adults may not always detect or accurately interpret common symptoms of HF such as shortness of breath, or they may have atypical symptoms such as weakness and somnolence. Decreased renal function can make the older patient resistant to diuretics and more sensitive to changes in volume. The administration of diuretics to older men requires nursing surveillance for bladder distention caused by urethral obstruction from an enlarged prostate gland. The bladder may be assessed with an ultrasound scanner or the suprapubic area palpated for an oval mass and percussed for dullness, indicative of bladder fullness. Urinary frequency and urgency may be particularly stressful to older patients, as many have arthritis and limited mobility.

NURSING PROCESS

The Patient with Heart Failure



Despite advances in treatment of HF, morbidity and mortality remain high. Nurses have a major impact on outcomes for patients with HF, especially in the areas of patient education and monitoring.

Assessment

Nursing assessment for the patient with HF focuses on observing for effectiveness of therapy and for the patient's ability to understand and implement self-care management strategies. Signs and symptoms of worsening HF are analyzed and reported to the patient's provider so that therapy can be adjusted. The nurse also explores the patient's emotional response to the diagnosis of HF, because it is a chronic and often progressive condition that is commonly associated with depression and other psychosocial issues (Jiang, Shorey, Seah, et al., 2018).

Health History

The health history focuses on the signs and symptoms of HF, such as dyspnea, fatigue, and edema. Sleep disturbances, particularly sleep suddenly interrupted by shortness of breath, may be reported. Patients are asked about the number of pillows needed for sleep, edema, abdominal symptoms, altered mental status, activities of daily living, and the activities that cause fatigue. Nurses need to be aware of the variety of clinical manifestations that may indicate worsening HF and assess the patient accordingly. While obtaining the patient's history, the nurse assesses the patient's understanding of HF, self-care management strategies, and the patient's ability and willingness to adhere to those strategies.

Physical Examination

The patient is observed for restlessness and anxiety that might suggest hypoxia from pulmonary congestion. The patient's level of consciousness is also evaluated for any changes, as low CO can decrease the flow of oxygen to the brain.

The rate and depth of respirations are assessed along with the effort required for breathing. The lungs are auscultated to detect crackles and wheezes (Meyer, 2019a). Crackles are produced by the sudden opening of edematous narrowed airways and alveoli. They may be heard at the end of inspiration and are not cleared with coughing. Wheezing may also be heard in some patients who have bronchospasm along with pulmonary congestion.

The blood pressure is carefully evaluated, because patients with HF may present with hypotension or hypertension. Patients may be assessed for orthostatic hypotension, especially if they report lightheadedness, dizziness, or syncope. The heart is auscultated for an S₃ heart sound, which is an early sign that increased blood volume fills the ventricle with each beat. Heart rate and rhythm are also documented, and patients are often placed on continuous ECG monitoring in the hospital setting. When the heart rate is rapid or very slow, the CO decreases and potentially worsens the HF. JVD is assessed with the patient sitting at a 45-degree angle; distention greater than 4 cm above the sternal angle is considered abnormal and indicative of right ventricular failure (Bickley,

2017). This is an estimate, not a precise measurement, of high central venous pressure.

The nurse assesses peripheral pulses and rates their volume on a scale from 0 (not palpable) to 3+ (bounding). The skin is also assessed for color and temperature. With significant decreases in SV, there is a decrease in perfusion to the periphery, decreasing the volume of pulses and causing the skin to feel cool and appear pale or cyanotic. The feet and lower legs are examined for edema; if the patient is supine in bed, the sacrum and back are also assessed for edema. The upper extremities may also become edematous in some patients. Edema is typically rated on a scale from 0 (no edema) to 4+ (severe pitting edema).

The abdomen is examined for tenderness and hepatomegaly. The presence of firmness, distention, and possible ascites is noted. The liver may be assessed for hepatojugular reflux. The patient is asked to breathe normally while manual pressure is applied over the right upper quadrant of the abdomen for 30–60 s. If neck vein distention increases more than 1 cm, the finding is positive for increased venous pressure.

If the patient is hospitalized, the nurse measures urinary output and evaluates it in terms of diuretic use. Intake and output records are rigorously maintained and analyzed. It is important to track whether the patient has excreted excessive volume (i.e., negative fluid balance is generally the goal). The intake and output is then compared with changes in weight. Although diuresis is expected, the patient with HF must also be monitored for **oliguria** (diminished urine output, less than 0.5 mL/kg/h for at least 6 h or <400 mL/24 h) or **anuria** (urine output of less than 50 mL/24 h) because of the risk of renal dysfunction.

The patient is weighed daily in the hospital or at home, at the same time of day, with the same type of clothing, and on the same scale. If there is a significant change in weight (i.e., 2–3-lb increase in a day or 5-lb increase in a wk), the primary provider is notified and medications are adjusted (e.g., the diuretic dose is increased).

Diagnosis

NURSING DIAGNOSES

Based on the assessment data, major nursing diagnoses may include the following:

- Activity intolerance associated with decreased CO
- Hypervolaemia associated with the HF syndrome
- Anxiety associated with clinical manifestations of HF
- Powerlessness associated with chronic illness and hospitalizations
- Impaired family ability to manage regime

COLLABORATIVE PROBLEMS/POTENTIAL COMPLICATIONS

Potential complications may include the following:

- Pulmonary edema
- Hypotension, poor perfusion, and cardiogenic shock (see Chapter 11)
- Arrhythmias (see Chapter 22)
- Thromboembolism (see Chapter 26)
- Pericardial effusion (see later discussion in this chapter)

Planning and Goals

Major goals for the patient may include promoting activity and reducing fatigue, relieving fluid overload symptoms,

decreasing anxiety or increasing the patient's ability to manage anxiety, encouraging the patient to verbalize their ability to make decisions and influence outcomes, and educating the patient and family about health management.

Nursing Interventions

Nursing interventions revolve around promoting the patient's activity tolerance, managing the patient's fluid volume status, assisting the patient so that anxiety is relieved, helping to minimize any feelings of powerlessness that the patient might experience, and assisting the patient and family members to effectively manage the patient's health. In addition, nursing interventions must be attuned to prevent and manage acute complications that can be experienced by patients with HF.

PROMOTING ACTIVITY TOLERANCE

Reduced physical activity caused by HF symptoms leads to physical deconditioning that worsens the patient's symptoms and exercise tolerance. Prolonged inactivity, which may be self-imposed, should be avoided because of its deconditioning effects and risks, such as pressure injuries (especially in edematous patients) and venous thromboembolism. An acute illness that exacerbates HF symptoms or requires hospitalization may be an indication for temporary bed rest. Otherwise, some type of physical activity every day should be encouraged. A typical program for a patient with HF might include a daily walking regimen, with the duration increased over a 6-wk period. The primary provider, nurse, and patient collaborate to develop a schedule that promotes pacing and prioritization of activities. The schedule should alternate activities with periods of rest and avoid having two significant energy-consuming activities occur on the same day or in immediate succession. Before undertaking physical activity, the patient should be given guidelines similar to those noted in Chart 25-3. Because some patients may be severely debilitated, they may need to limit physical activities to only 3–5 min at a time, one to four times per day. The patient should

increase the duration of the activity, then the frequency, before increasing the intensity of the activity (Piña, 2019).

Barriers to performing activities are identified, and methods of adjusting an activity are discussed. For example, vegetables can be chopped or peeled while sitting at the kitchen table rather than standing at the kitchen counter. Small, frequent meals decrease the amount of energy needed for digestion while providing adequate nutrition. The nurse helps the patient identify peak and low periods of energy, planning energy-consuming activities for peak periods. For example, the patient may prepare the meals for the entire day in the morning. Pacing and prioritizing activities help maintain the patient's energy to promote participation in regular physical activity.

The patient's response to activities needs to be monitored. If the patient is hospitalized, vital signs and oxygen saturation levels are monitored before, during, and immediately after an activity to identify whether they are within the desired range. Heart rate should return to baseline within 3 min following the activity. If the patient is at home, the degree of fatigue felt after the activity can be used to assess the response. If the patient tolerates the activity, short- and long-term goals can be developed to gradually increase the intensity, duration, and frequency of activity.

Adherence to exercise training is essential if the patient is to benefit from it, but it may be difficult for patients with other comorbid conditions (e.g., arthritis, anemia, cardiomyopathy, obesity, chronic kidney disease, chronic obstructive pulmonary disease) and those who have had HF for a longer time (Cattadori, Segurini, Picozzi, et al., 2018). Referral to a cardiac rehabilitation program may be indicated, especially for patients newly diagnosed with HF (Piña, 2019). A supervised program may also benefit those who need a structured environment, significant educational support, regular encouragement, and interpersonal contact.

MANAGING FLUID VOLUME

Patients with severe HF may receive IV diuretic therapy; however, patients with less severe symptoms are typically prescribed oral diuretics. Oral diuretics should be given early in the morning so that diuresis does not interfere with the patient's nighttime rest. Discussing the timing of medication administration is especially important for older patients who may have urinary urgency or incontinence. A single dose of a diuretic may cause the patient to excrete a large volume of fluid shortly after its administration.

The patient's fluid status is monitored closely by auscultating the lungs, monitoring daily body weight, and assisting the patient to adhere to a low sodium diet by reading food labels and avoiding high sodium foods such as canned, processed, and convenience foods (Chart 25-4). Weight gain in a patient with HF almost always reflects fluid retention. If the diet includes fluid restriction, the nurse can assist the patient to plan fluid intake throughout the day while respecting the patient's dietary preferences. If the patient is receiving IV fluids and medications, the amount of fluid needs to be monitored closely, and the primary provider or pharmacist can be consulted about the possibility of maximizing the amount of medication in the same volume of IV fluid (e.g., double concentrating to decrease the fluid volume given).

The patient is positioned or taught how to assume a position that facilitates breathing. The number of pillows may

Chart
25-3



HEALTH PROMOTION

An Exercise Program for Patients with Heart Failure

Before undertaking physical activity, the patient should be given the following guidelines:

- Talk with your primary provider for specific exercise program recommendations.
- Begin with low-impact activities such as walking.
- Start with warm-up activity followed by sessions that gradually build up to about 30 min.
- Follow your exercise period with cool-down activities.
- Avoid performing physical activities outside in extreme hot, cold, or humid weather.
- Wait 2 h after eating a meal before performing the physical activity.
- Ensure that you are able to talk during the physical activity; if you cannot do so, decrease the intensity of activity.
- Stop the activity if severe shortness of breath, pain, or dizziness develops.

Adapted from Piña, I. L. (2019). Cardiac rehabilitation in patients with heart failure. *UpToDate*. Retrieved on 9/11/2019 at: www.uptodate.com/contents/cardiac-rehabilitation-in-patients-with-heart-failure

Chart
25-4**HEALTH PROMOTION**
Facts About Dietary Sodium

Although the major source of sodium in the average American diet is salt, many types of natural foods contain varying amounts of sodium. Even if no salt is added in cooking and if salty foods are avoided, the daily diet will still contain about 2000 mg of sodium. Fresh fruits and vegetables are low in sodium and should be encouraged.

Additives in Food

In general, food prepared at home is lower in sodium than restaurant or processed foods. Added food substances (additives), such as sodium alginate, which improves food texture, sodium benzoate, which acts as a preservative, and disodium phosphate, which improves cooking quality in certain foods, increase the sodium intake when included in the daily diet. Therefore, patients on low sodium diets should be advised to check labels carefully for words such as “salt” or “sodium,” especially on canned foods. For example, without looking at the sodium content per serving found on the nutrition labels, when given a choice between a serving of potato chips and a cup of canned cream of mushroom soup, most would think that soup is lower in sodium. However, when the labels are examined, the lower sodium choice is found to be the chips. Although potato chips are *not* recommended in a low sodium diet, this example illustrates that it is important to read food labels to determine both sodium content and serving size.

Nonfood Sodium Sources

Sodium is contained in municipal water. Water softeners also increase the sodium content of drinking water. Patients on sodium-restricted diets should be cautioned against using non-prescription medications such as antacids, cough syrups, and laxatives. Salt substitutes may be allowed, but it is recognized that they are high in potassium. Over-the-counter medications should not be used without first consulting the patient’s primary provider.

Promoting Dietary Adherence

If patients find food unpalatable because of the dietary sodium restrictions and/or the taste disturbances caused by the medications, they may refuse to eat or to follow the dietary regimen. For this reason, severe sodium restrictions should be avoided, and diuretic medication should be balanced with the patient’s ability to restrict dietary sodium. A variety of flavorings, such as lemon juice, vinegar, and herbs, may be used to improve the taste of the food and facilitate acceptance of the diet. It is important to consider the patient’s food preferences. Diet counseling and educational handouts can be geared toward a patient–family-centered approach and with cultural practices considered.

Adapted from American Heart Association (AHA). (2016). Shaking the salt habit. Retrieved on 10/24/2019 at: www.heart.org/HEARTORG/Conditions/HighBloodPressure/PreventionTreatmentofHighBloodPressure/Shaking-the-Salt-Habit_UCM_303241_Article.jsp#.Vzy9eNe3BK8

be increased, the head of the bed may be elevated, or the patient may sit in a recliner. In these positions, the venous return to the heart (preload) is reduced, pulmonary congestion is reduced, and pressure on the diaphragm is minimized. The lower arms can be supported with pillows to eliminate the fatigue caused by the pull of the patient’s weight on the shoulder muscles. If the patient is experiencing acute decompensation, positioning them upright, preferably with the legs

dangling over the side of the bed, has the immediate effect of decreasing venous return, decreasing right ventricular stroke volume, and decreasing lung congestion.

Because decreased circulation in edematous areas increases the risk of pressure injuries, the nurse assesses for skin breakdown and institutes preventive measures. Positioning to avoid pressure and frequent changes of position help prevent pressure injuries.

CONTROLLING ANXIETY

Patients with HF may exhibit signs and symptoms of anxiety. In addition to psychosocial sources of anxiety, the physiologic compensatory mechanisms include activation of neurohormones including catecholamines. Complex medical interventions, such as implantation of an ICD can provoke anxiety in patients and families. These sources of anxiety include living with the threat of shocks, role changes, and concerns about the patient’s ability to carry out activities of daily living. The patient’s anxiety may intensify at night and interfere with sleep. Emotional stress further stimulates the sympathetic nervous system, causing vasoconstriction, elevated arterial pressure, and increased heart rate. This sympathetic response increases cardiac workload.

When the patient exhibits anxiety, the nurse takes steps to promote physical comfort and provide psychological support. As mentioned previously, the patient may be more comfortable sitting in a recliner. Oxygen may be given during an acute event to diminish the work of breathing and increase the patient’s comfort. In many cases, a family member’s presence provides reassurance. Patients with HF rely on their families for many aspects of care; therefore, nurses should assess the needs of family caregivers and provide support to them (Hodson, Peacock, & Holtslander, 2019).

Along with reassurance, the nurse can begin educating the patient and family about techniques for controlling anxiety and avoiding anxiety-provoking situations. This includes how to identify factors that contribute to anxiety and how to use relaxation techniques to control anxious feelings. As the patient’s anxiety decreases, cardiac function may improve and symptoms of HF may decrease.

Quality and Safety Nursing Alert

When patients with HF are delirious, confused, or anxious, restraints should be avoided. Restraints are likely to be resisted, and resistance inevitably increases the cardiac workload.

MINIMIZING POWERLESSNESS

Patients with HF may feel overwhelmed with their diagnosis and treatment regimen, leading to feelings of powerlessness. Contributing factors may include lack of knowledge and lack of opportunity to make decisions, particularly if health care providers or family members do not encourage the patient to participate in the treatment decision-making process.

Nurses should help patients recognize their choices, and that they can positively influence the outcomes of their diagnosis and treatment. Taking time to listen actively to patients encourages them to express their concerns and ask questions. Other strategies include providing the patient with decision making opportunities, such as when activities are to occur,

or encouraging food and fluid choices consistent with the dietary restrictions. Encouragement is provided, progress is identified, and the patient is assisted to differentiate between factors that can and cannot be controlled.

In addition to feelings of powerlessness, patients with HF have a high incidence of depressive symptoms, which are associated with increased morbidity and mortality (Jiang et al., 2018). Because depressive symptoms are known to increase as the disease worsens, patients with HF need to be screened for depression so that it can be treated, hopefully maintaining the patient's functional status and quality of life.

ASSISTING PATIENTS AND FAMILIES TO EFFECTIVELY MANAGE HEALTH

Therapeutic regimens for HF are complex and require the patient and family to make significant lifestyle changes. An inability or unwillingness to adhere to dietary and pharmacologic recommendations can lead to episodes of acute decompensated HF and hospitalization. Nonadherence with prescribed diet and fluid restrictions and medications cause many hospital readmissions. Nursing research findings suggest that for some patients with HF who are taking more than one medication daily, the decision to not take HF medications as prescribed may actually reflect their efforts to best manage their personal health, and, therefore, may be a self-care strategy (see the Nursing Research Profile in Chart 25-5) (Meraz, 2020).

Nurses have a key role in managing episodes of acute decompensated HF and in developing a comprehensive education and discharge plan to prevent hospital readmissions

and increase the patient's quality of life. Because of the high cost of hospitalization for HF, the Centers for Medicare & Medicaid Services (CMS) initiated a program that reduces reimbursement to hospitals with a high 30-d readmission rate (U.S. Department of Health and Human Services [HHS], 2019). Research continues to identify the most effective interventions that may decrease these rates. A number of evidence-based components are known to increase the effectiveness of a discharge plan for patients with HF, including providing them with comprehensive, patient-centered instructions, scheduling follow-up visits with their primary providers within 7 d of discharge, and following up by telephone within 3 d of discharge (Yancy et al., 2013; Yancy et al., 2016; Yancy et al., 2017).

MONITORING AND MANAGING POTENTIAL COMPLICATIONS

Because HF is a complex and progressive condition, patients are at risk for many complications, including acute decompensated HF and pulmonary edema; hypotension and cardiogenic shock (see Chapter 11); arrhythmias (see Chapter 22); thromboembolism formation (see Chapter 26); and pericardial effusion (see later discussion).


 **Pulmonary Edema.** As described previously, pulmonary edema is associated with acute decompensated HF that can lead to acute respiratory failure and death. If it is recognized early, pulmonary edema may be alleviated by increasing dosages of diuretics and by implementing other interventions to decrease preload. For instance, placing the patient in an upright position with the feet and legs dependent

Chart 25-5



NURSING RESEARCH PROFILE Medication Nonadherence or Self-Care?

Meraz, R. (2020). Medication nonadherence or self-care? Understanding the medication decision-making process and experiences of older adults with heart failure. *Journal of Cardiovascular Nursing*, 35(1), 26–34.

Purpose

It is estimated that over half of patients with heart failure do not take their medications as prescribed. The reasons why many patients with heart failure do not adhere to their prescribed medication regimen are elusive, particularly since nonadherence is associated with hospitalization and emergency department visits. Therefore, the purpose of this study was to discover why patients with heart failure might not take their heart failure medications as prescribed.

Design

This was a qualitative study that used narrative inquiry and storytelling to discover why community dwelling patients with heart failure might not adhere to their medication regimen. Eleven participants, all 65 y of age or older, volunteered to be interviewed. Each of these participants had to live independently in the community setting, had to take at least two medications daily to treat heart failure, and had to self-administer these medications in order to be eligible to participate in this study.

Findings

Results from participant interviews found that patients' nonadherence with the prescribed medication regimen was deliberate, and not because of forgetfulness. In all reported instances, it

was not contingent upon financial constraints, either. Some participants stopped taking a medication while others adjusted the dosages. Participants' deliberate decisions to adjust their medication regimen tended to be made based on the belief that they knew their own bodies and needs best, and felt that they were best equipped to take care of their own needs. Others noted that at times it was too difficult to get in contact with their primary providers or nurses, and that their primary providers or nurses were too busy to discuss their medication regimen with them. Most noted that they researched online their medications' effects and felt competent to manage their medication dosage without necessarily consulting their providers. Paradoxically, participants did not view their decisions to self-adjust their prescribed medication regimens as consonant with nonadherence.

Nursing Implications

Patients with heart failure who are prescribed multiple medications to treat their heart failure may not view self-adjustment of their prescriptions as tantamount to nonadherence. It seems likely that these self-care/nonadherent practices place these patients at risk for hospitalization and morbid complications. Participants in this study noted that one key reason that they self-adjusted their medications was because their primary providers and nurses were "too busy" to talk to them about their medications. Nurses are in an ideal position to talk to patients with heart failure about their prescriptions, discover their concerns about their medications, help them find ways to problem-solve and manage side effects, and help them proactively engage in self-care so that they avoid hospitalization.

reduces left ventricular workload. The treatment regimen and the patient's understanding of and adherence to it are assessed. The long-range approach for preventing pulmonary edema must be directed at identifying and managing its precipitating factors.

Clinical management of a patient with acute pulmonary edema due to left ventricular failure is directed toward reducing volume overload, improving ventricular function, and increasing oxygenation. These goals are accomplished through a combination of oxygen and ventilatory support, IV medication, and nursing assessment and interventions.

The patient's airway and breathing are assessed to determine the severity of respiratory distress, along with vital signs. The patient is placed on pulse oximetry, a cardiac monitor, and IV access is confirmed or established for administration of medications. Laboratory tests are obtained, including arterial blood gases, electrolytes, BUN, and creatinine; other laboratory tests that may be indicated include a complete blood cell count (CBC), BNP, or a serum troponin-I. A chest x-ray or an ultrasound of the lungs may be obtained to confirm the extent of pulmonary edema (Meyer, 2019a).

Oxygen is given in concentrations adequate to relieve hypoxemia and dyspnea; a non-rebreathing mask may be used initially. If respiratory failure is severe or persists, noninvasive positive-pressure ventilation is the preferred mode of assisted ventilation (Colucci, 2019). For some patients, endotracheal (ET) intubation and mechanical ventilation are required. The ventilator can provide positive end-expiratory pressure (PEEP), which is effective in reducing venous return, decreasing fluid movement from the pulmonary capillaries to the alveoli, and improving oxygenation (see Chapter 19). Oxygenation is monitored by pulse oximetry and by measurement of arterial blood gases.

The patient who is experiencing pulmonary edema is likely going to be highly anxious, as are the patient's family members. As the ability to breathe decreases, the patient's fear and anxiety rise proportionately, making the condition more severe. Reassuring the patient and family and providing skillful anticipatory nursing care are integral parts of the therapy. Because the patient is in an unstable condition, the nurse must remain with the patient. The nurse gives the patient simple, concise information in a reassuring voice about what is being done to treat the condition and the expected results.

Vasodilators such as IV nitroglycerin or nitroprusside may enhance symptom relief in pulmonary edema, as previously described (Meyer, 2019a). Blood pressure is continually assessed in patients receiving IV vasodilator infusions.

Furosemide or another loop diuretic is given by IV push or as a continuous infusion to produce a rapid diuretic effect. The blood pressure is closely monitored as the urine output increases, because it is possible for the patient to become hypotensive as intravascular volume decreases. The patient receiving diuretic therapy may excrete a large volume of urine within minutes after a potent diuretic is given. A bedside commode may be used to decrease the energy required by the patient and to reduce the resultant increase in cardiac workload induced by getting on and off a bedpan. If necessary, in order to carefully monitor urine output, an indwelling urinary catheter may be inserted.

Once the patient is stable, they may transition to oral diuretics; intake and output, daily weights, serum electrolytes, and creatinine are carefully monitored.

Many potential problems associated with HF therapy relate to the use of diuretics. These problems require ongoing nursing assessment and collaborative intervention:

Excessive and repeated diuresis can lead to hypokalemia (i.e., potassium depletion). Signs include ventricular arrhythmias, hypotension, muscle weakness, and generalized weakness. In patients receiving digoxin, hypokalemia can lead to digitalis toxicity, which increases the likelihood of dangerous arrhythmias. Patients with HF may also develop low levels of magnesium, which can add to the risk of arrhythmias. Hyperkalemia may occur, especially with the use of ACE inhibitors, ARBs, or spironolactone. Hyperkalemia can also lead to profound bradycardia and other arrhythmias. Prolonged diuretic therapy may produce hyponatremia (deficiency of sodium in the blood), which can result in disorientation, weakness, muscle cramps, and anorexia. Volume depletion from excessive fluid loss may lead to dehydration and hypotension. ACE inhibitors and beta-blockers may contribute to the hypotension. Other problems associated with diuretics include increased serum creatinine (indicative of renal dysfunction) and hyperuricemia (excessive uric acid in the blood), which leads to gout.

PROMOTING HOME, COMMUNITY-BASED, AND TRANSITIONAL CARE

Facilitating an easy and smooth transition back into the community is of paramount importance for the patient living with HF. Community-based nursing interventions for patients with HF can improve health outcomes and health care value as evidenced by reduced hospital readmissions for up to 6 mo. Important nursing interventions that keep the patient with HF out of the hospital incorporate a multidisciplinary care planning approach (Jones, Bowles, Richard, et al., 2017).



Educating Patients About Self-Care. The nurse provides patient education and involves the patient and family in the therapeutic regimen to promote understanding and adherence to the plan. When the patient recognizes that the diagnosis of HF can be successfully managed with lifestyle changes and medications, recurrences of acute HF lessen, unnecessary hospitalizations decrease, and life expectancy increases. Nurses play a key role in educating patients and their families about medication management, a low sodium diet, moderate alcohol consumption, activity and exercise recommendations, smoking cessation, how to recognize the signs and symptoms of worsening HF, and when to contact the primary provider (Jones et al., 2017). Use of the teach-back technique to assess the patient's comprehension of the instructions can increase education effectiveness and prevent rehospitalization (Esquivel, White, Carroll, et al., 2018) (see Chapter 3 for further discussion of teach-back methods). In order for teach-back to be effective, the nurse must ensure adequate time is dedicated to ensuring that patient learning occurs (Esquivel et al., 2018). A basic home education plan for the patient with HF is presented in Chart 25-6. The patient should receive a written copy of the instructions.

The patient's readiness to learn and potential barriers to learning are assessed. Patients with HF may have temporary or ongoing cognitive impairment due to their illness or other factors, increasing the need to rely on an identified caretaker (Hodson et al., 2019). An effective treatment

Chart
25-6

HOME CARE CHECKLIST

The Patient with Heart Failure

At the completion of education, the patient and/or caregiver will be able to:

- Identify heart failure as a chronic disease that can be managed with medications and specific self-management behaviors.
- State the impact of heart failure on physiologic functioning, ADLs, IADLs, roles, relationships, and spirituality.
- State the name, dose, side effects, frequency, and schedule for all medications.
- Take or administer medications daily, exactly as prescribed.
- Monitor effects of medication such as changes in breathing and edema.
- Know signs and symptoms of orthostatic hypotension and how to prevent it.
- Weigh self daily at the same time, with same clothes.
- Restrict sodium intake to no more than 2 g/day:
 - Adapt diet by examining nutrition labels to check sodium content per serving.
 - Avoid canned or processed foods, eating fresh or frozen foods.
 - Consult the written diet plan and the list of permitted and restricted foods.
 - Avoid salt use.
 - Avoid excesses in eating and drinking.
- Participate in prescribed activity program:
 - Participate in a daily exercise program.
 - Increase walking and other activities gradually, provided they do not cause unusual fatigue or dyspnea.
 - Conserve energy by balancing activity with rest periods.
 - Avoid activity in extremes of heat and cold, which increase the work of the heart.
- Recognize that air-conditioning may be essential in a hot, humid environment.
- Develop methods to manage and prevent stress:
 - Avoid tobacco.
 - Avoid alcohol.
 - Engage in social and diversional activities.
- Identify community resources for peer and caregiver/family support:
 - Identify sources of support (e.g., friends, relatives, faith community).
 - Identify the contact details for support services for patients and their caregivers/families.
- Report immediately to the primary provider or clinic any of the following:
 - Gain in weight of 2–3 lb (0.9–1.4 kg) in 1 d, or 5 lb (2.3 kg) in 1 wk
 - Unusual shortness of breath with activity or at rest
 - Increased swelling of ankles, feet, or abdomen
 - Persistent cough
 - Loss of appetite
 - Development of restless sleep; increase in number of pillows needed to sleep
 - Profound fatigue
- State how to reach primary provider with questions or complications:
 - State time and date of follow-up appointments and diagnostic tests.
- Identify the need for health promotion, disease prevention, and screening activities.

ADLs, activities of daily living; IADLs, instrumental activities of daily living.

plan incorporates both the patient's goals and those of the health care providers. The nurse must consider cultural factors and adapt the education plan accordingly. Patients and families need to understand that effective HF management is influenced by choices made about treatment options and their ability to follow the treatment plan. They also need to be informed that health care providers are available to assist them in reaching their health care goals.

Continuing and Transitional Care. Successful management of HF requires adherence to a complex medical regimen that includes multiple lifestyle changes for most patients. Assistance may be provided through a number of options that optimize evidence-based recommendations for effective management of HF. Depending on the patient's physical status and the availability of family assistance, a home care referral or another type of disease management program may be indicated for a patient who has been hospitalized. Transitional care programs (hospital to home) that include telephone contact along with home visits have been shown to decrease rehospitalizations and increase patient quality of life (Cyrille & Patel, 2017; Jones et al., 2017). Home visits by nurses who are specially trained in managing patients with HF provide assessment and management tailored to specific individualized patient needs. Older patients and those who have long-standing heart disease with compromised physical stamina often require assistance with the transition to home after hospitalization for an acute episode of HF. The home

health nurse assesses the physical environment of the home and makes suggestions for adapting the home environment to meet the patient's activity limitations. If stairs are a concern, the patient can plan the day's activities so that stair-climbing is minimized; for some patients, a temporary bedroom may be set up on the main level of the home. The home health nurse works with the patient and family to maximize the benefits of these changes.

The home health nurse also reinforces and clarifies information about dietary changes and fluid restrictions, the need to monitor symptoms and daily body weight, and the importance of obtaining follow-up care with the primary provider's office or clinic. Assistance may be given in scheduling and keeping appointments as well. The patient is encouraged to gradually increase their self-care and responsibility for carrying out the therapeutic regimen.

Evidence-based HF guidelines also recommend patient referral to HF clinics, which provide intensive nursing management along with medical care in a collaborative model. Many of these clinics are managed by advanced practice nurses. Referral to an HF clinic gives the patient ready access to continuing education, professional nursing and medical staff, and timely adjustments to treatment regimens. HF clinics can also provide outpatient treatment (e.g., IV diuretics, laboratory monitoring) as an alternative to hospitalization. Because of the additional support and coordination of care, patients managed through HF clinics have fewer

exacerbations of HF, fewer hospitalizations, decreased costs of medical care, and increased quality of life (Yancy, 2013).

Other disease management programs are carried out through telehealth, using telephones or computers to maintain contact with patients and to obtain patient data. This enables nurses and others to assess and manage patients on a frequent basis, without requiring patients to make frequent visits to health care providers. A variety of techniques ranging from simple telephone monitoring to sophisticated computer and video connections that monitor symptoms, daily weight, vital signs, heart sounds, and breath sounds may be used. Patient data may also include hemodynamics and other parameters transmitted from implantable devices. Studies have shown that telehealth management can decrease costs and hospitalizations for acute exacerbations of HF (Koehler, Koehler, Deckwart, et al., 2018).

End-of-Life Considerations. Because HF is a chronic and often progressive condition, patients and families need to consider issues related to the end-of-life and when palliative or hospice care should be considered (Cross, Kamal, Taylor, et al., 2019). Although the prognosis in patients with HF may be uncertain, issues often arise sooner or later related to the patient's thoughts and possible concerns about the use of complex treatment options (e.g., implantation of an ICD or a ventricular assist device [VAD]). VADs are an option for some patients with HF who have failed medical therapy and who are not candidates for cardiac transplantation. Discussions concerning the use of technology, preferences for end-of-life care, and advance directives should take place while the patient is able to participate and express preferences. For example, with the expanded use of ICDs in the HF population, patients with ICDs, their families, and their primary providers should receive instructions for ICD inactivation at the end-of-life to prevent inappropriate discharges. See Chapter 13 for further discussion of end-of-life care.

Evaluation

Expected patient outcomes may include:

1. Demonstrates tolerance for desired activity
 - a. Describes adaptive methods for usual activities
 - b. Schedules activities to conserve energy and reduce fatigue and dyspnea
 - c. Maintains heart rate, blood pressure, respiratory rate, and pulse oximetry within the targeted range
2. Maintains fluid balance
 - a. Exhibits decreased peripheral edema
 - b. Verbalizes understanding of fluid intake and diuretic use
3. Decreased anxiety
 - a. Avoids situations that produce stress
 - b. Sleeps comfortably at night
 - c. Reports decreased stress and anxiety
 - d. Denies symptoms of depression
4. Makes sound decisions regarding care and treatment
 - a. Demonstrates ability to influence outcomes
5. Patients and family members adhere to healthy regimen
 - a. Performs and records daily weights
 - b. Limits dietary sodium intake to no more than 2 g/day
 - c. Takes medications as prescribed
 - d. Reports symptoms of worsening HF
 - e. Makes and keeps appointments for follow-up care

6. Exhibits no evidence of acute decompensation and pulmonary edema
7. Denies dyspnea
8. No apparent delirium or acute anxiety
9. Maintains fluid balance as noted previously
10. No evidence of electrolyte disturbances from diuretic therapy

COMPLICATIONS FROM HEART DISEASE



Cardiogenic Shock

Cardiogenic shock occurs when decreased CO leads to inadequate tissue perfusion and initiation of the shock syndrome. Cardiogenic shock most commonly occurs following acute MI when a large area of myocardium becomes ischemic and hypokinetic. It also can occur as a result of end-stage HF, cardiac tamponade, pulmonary embolism (PE), cardiomyopathy, and arrhythmias. Cardiogenic shock is a life-threatening condition with a high mortality rate. (See Chapter 11 for detailed information about the pathophysiology and management of cardiogenic shock.)

Thromboembolism

Patients with cardiovascular disorders are at risk for the development of arterial thromboemboli and venous thromboemboli (VTE). Intracardiac thrombi can form in patients with atrial fibrillation because the atria do not contract forcefully, resulting in slow and turbulent flow, and increasing the likelihood of thrombus formation. Mural thrombi can also form on ventricular walls when contractility is poor. Intracardiac thrombi can break off and travel through the circulation to other structures, including the brain, where they cause a stroke. Clots within the cardiac chambers can be detected by an echocardiogram and treated with anticoagulant agents, such as heparin and warfarin (see Chapter 26 for further discussion of assessment and treatment of VTEs; Table 26-2 discusses specific anticoagulant medications).

Decreased mobility and other factors in patients with cardiac disease also can lead to clot formation in the deep veins of the legs. Although signs and symptoms of deep vein thrombosis (DVT) can vary, patients may report leg pain and swelling and the leg may appear erythematous and feel warm. These clots can break off and travel through the inferior vena cava and through the right side of the heart into the pulmonary artery, where they can cause a pulmonary embolus (PE) (see Chapter 26 for further discussion of assessment and treatment of PE).

Pericardial Effusion and Cardiac Tamponade

Pericardial effusion (accumulation of fluid in the pericardial sac) may accompany advanced HF, pericarditis, metastatic carcinoma, cardiac surgery, or trauma. Normally, the pericardial sac contains about 20 mL of fluid, which is needed to decrease friction for the beating heart. An increase in

pericardial fluid raises the pressure within the pericardial sac and compresses the heart. This has the following effects:

- Elevated pressure in all cardiac chambers
- Decreased venous return due to atrial compression
- Inability of the ventricles to distend and fill adequately

Pericardial fluid may build up slowly without causing noticeable symptoms until a large amount (1 to 2 L) accumulates (Hoit, 2019). However, a rapidly developing effusion (e.g., hemorrhage into the pericardial sac from chest trauma) can quickly stretch the pericardium to its maximum size and cause an acute problem. As pericardial fluid increases, pericardial pressure increases, reducing venous return to the heart and decreasing CO. This can result in cardiac tamponade, which causes low CO and obstructive shock.

Clinical Manifestations

The signs and symptoms of pericardial effusion can vary according to whether the problem develops quickly or slowly. In acute cardiac tamponade, the patient suddenly develops chest pain, tachypnea, and dyspnea. JVD results from poor right atrial filling and increased venous pressure. Hypotension occurs from low CO, and heart sounds are often muted. The subacute presentation of a pericardial effusion is less dramatic. The patient may report chest discomfort or a feeling of fullness. The feeling of pressure in the chest may result from stretching of the pericardial sac. These patients also develop dyspnea, JVD, and hypotension over time (Hoit, 2019). Patients with cardiac tamponade typically have tachycardia in response to low CO. In addition to hypotension, patients with cardiac tamponade may develop **pulsus paradoxus**, a systolic blood pressure that is markedly lower during inhalation. Also known as paradoxical pulse, this finding is characterized by an abnormal difference of at least 10 mm Hg in systolic pressure between the point that it is heard during exhalation and the point that it is heard during inhalation. This difference is caused by the variation in cardiac filling that occurs with changes in intrathoracic pressure during breathing. The cardinal signs of cardiac tamponade are illustrated in Figure 25-4.

Assessment and Diagnostic Findings

An echocardiogram is performed to confirm the diagnosis and quantify the amount of pericardial fluid. A chest x-ray may show an enlarged cardiac silhouette due to pericardial effusion. The ECG shows tachycardia and may also show low voltage (Hoit, 2019). See Chapter 22 for discussion of the significance of ECG abnormalities.

Medical Management

Acute management of cardiac tamponade may include a pericardiocentesis; whereas, recurrent effusions may be managed with a pericardiectomy.

Pericardiocentesis

If cardiac function becomes seriously impaired, **pericardiocentesis** (puncture of the pericardial sac to aspirate pericardial fluid) is performed. During this procedure, the patient is monitored by continuous ECG and frequent vital signs. Catheter pericardiocentesis is performed using echocardiography to guide placement of the drainage catheter (Hoit, 2019).

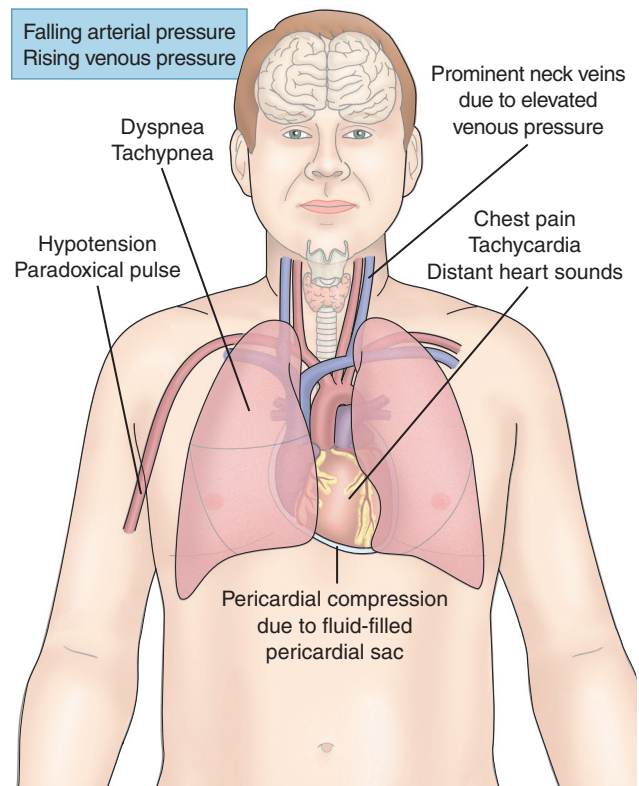


Figure 25-4 • Assessment findings in cardiac tamponade resulting from pericardial effusion include chest pain or fullness, dyspnea, tachypnea, jugular vein distention, hypotension, paradoxical pulse, tachycardia, and distant heart sounds.

A resulting decrease in central venous pressure and an associated increase in blood pressure after withdrawal of pericardial fluid indicate that the cardiac tamponade has been relieved. The patient almost always feels immediate relief. If there is a substantial amount of pericardial fluid aspirated, a small catheter may be left in place to drain recurrent accumulation of blood or fluid. Pericardial fluid is sent to the laboratory for examination for tumor cells, bacterial culture, chemical and serologic analysis, and differential blood cell count.

Complications of pericardiocentesis include coronary artery puncture, myocardial trauma, arrhythmias, pleural laceration, and gastric puncture. After pericardiocentesis, the patient's heart rhythm, blood pressure, venous pressure, and heart sounds are monitored frequently to detect possible recurrence of cardiac tamponade. A follow-up echocardiogram is also performed. If the effusion recurs, repeat aspiration is necessary. Cardiac tamponade may require treatment by open surgical drainage (pericardiectomy) (Hoit, 2019).

Pericardiectomy

Recurrent pericardial effusions, usually associated with neoplastic disease, may be treated by a **pericardiectomy** (pericardial window). Under general anesthesia, a portion of the pericardium is excised to permit the exudative pericardial fluid to drain into the lymphatic system. The nursing care following the procedure includes routine postsurgical care (see Chapter 16) in addition to observation for recurrent tamponade.

Cardiac Arrest

In cardiac arrest, the heart is unable to pump and circulate blood to the body's organs and tissues. It is often caused by an arrhythmia such as ventricular fibrillation, progressive bradycardia, or asystole (i.e., absence of cardiac electrical activity and heart muscle contraction). Cardiac arrest can also occur when electrical activity is present on the ECG but cardiac contractions are ineffective, a condition called **pulseless electrical activity (PEA)**. PEA may be caused by a variety of problems such as profound hypovolemia (e.g., hemorrhage). Diagnoses that are commonly associated with cardiac arrest include MI, massive pulmonary emboli, hyperkalemia, hypothermia, severe hypoxia, and medication overdose. Rapid identification of these problems and prompt intervention can restore circulation in some patients.

Clinical Manifestations

In cardiac arrest, consciousness, pulse, and blood pressure are lost immediately. Breathing usually ceases, but ineffective respiratory gasping may occur. The pupils of the eyes begin dilating in less than a minute, and seizures may occur. Pallor and cyanosis are seen in the skin and mucous membranes. The risk of organ damage, including irreversible brain damage, and of death increases with every minute that passes. A patient's age and overall health determine their vulnerability to irreversible damage. As soon as possible, the diagnosis of cardiac arrest must be made and action taken immediately to restore circulation.

Emergency Assessment and Management: Cardiopulmonary Resuscitation

Cardiopulmonary resuscitation (CPR) provides blood flow to vital organs until effective circulation can be reestablished. Following the recognition of unresponsiveness, a protocol for basic life support is initiated. The AHA Guidelines Update for Cardiopulmonary Resuscitation and Emergency Cardiovascular Care direct the current protocols for CPR, medical emergency teams, postcardiac arrest care, and acute respiratory compromise. The primary goal of resuscitation protocols is to save lives by preventing in-hospital cardiac arrest and optimizing outcomes (AHA, 2017).

The resuscitation process begins with the immediate assessment of the patient for breathing and consciousness, then a call for assistance, as CPR can be performed most effectively with the addition of more health care providers and equipment (e.g., defibrillator). The current resuscitation protocol recommends the following practices for CPR:

1. *Quick recognition of sudden cardiac arrest.* The patient is assessed for responsiveness and breathing.
2. *Activation of the Emergency Response System.* Within a medical facility, a call is made to alert the emergency response team. Outside of a medical facility, 911 is called to activate the Emergency Medical Service (EMS).
3. *Performance of high-quality CPR.* If there is no carotid pulse detected, chest compressions are initiated at a rate of 100 bpm.
4. *Rapid cardiac rhythm analysis and defibrillation* within 2 minutes for patients in ventricular fibrillation or pulseless ventricular tachycardia, followed by continuous chest compressions.

Rescue breathing is no longer recommended unless health care providers are present; if that is the case, it is then started after chest compressions. The airway is opened using a head-tilt/chin-lift maneuver, and any obvious material in the mouth or throat is removed. An oropharyngeal airway may be inserted if available to help maintain patency of the airway. Rescue ventilations are provided using a bag-valve mask or mouth-mask device. Oxygen is given at 100% during resuscitation to correct hypoxemia and improve tissue oxygenation.

Compressions are performed with the patient on a firm surface such as the floor or a cardiac board. The provider, facing the patient's side, places one hand in the center of the chest on the lower half of the sternum and positions the other hand on top of the first hand (Fig. 25-5). The chest is compressed 2 inches (approximately 5 cm) at a rate of 100 compressions/min. Complete recoil of the chest must be allowed between compressions to allow for cardiac filling. Interruptions in CPR to switch providers or check for a pulse are minimized (Panchal, Berg, Hirsch, et al., 2019). It is recommended providers switch every 2 minutes due to the exertion of delivering effective compressions.

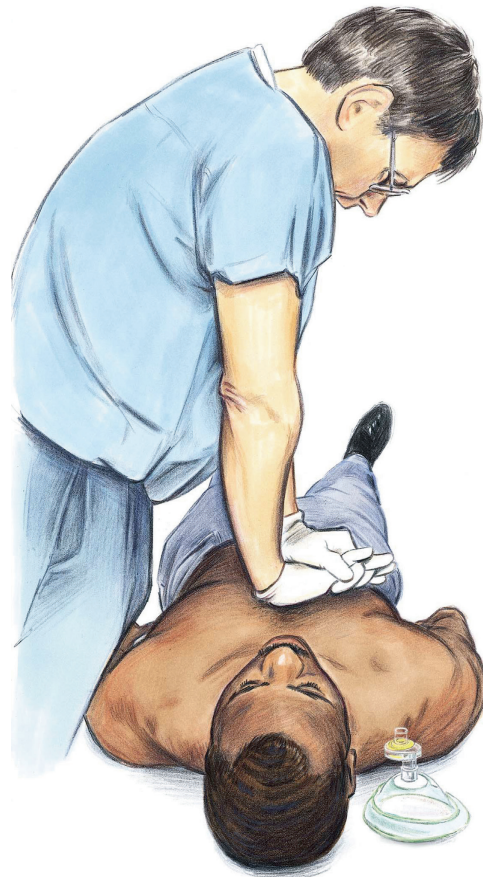


Figure 25-5 • Chest compressions in cardiopulmonary resuscitation are performed by placing the heel of one hand in the center of the chest over the sternum and the other hand on top of the first hand. Elbows are kept straight and body weight is used to apply forceful compressions to the lower sternum. The patient should be on a hard surface such as a cardiac board. Reprinted with permission from Field, J. M., Kudenchuk, P. J., O'Connor, R. E., et al. (2009). *The textbook of emergency cardiovascular care and CPR*. Philadelphia, PA: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.

Defibrillation

As soon as a monitor/defibrillator is available, monitor electrodes are applied to the patient's chest and the heart rhythm is analyzed. When an automated external defibrillator (AED) is used, the device is turned on, the pads are applied to the patient's chest, and the rhythm is analyzed by the defibrillator to determine whether a shock is indicated. When the ECG shows ventricular fibrillation or pulseless ventricular tachycardia, immediate defibrillation is the treatment of choice.

The AHA (2017) recommends the first defibrillation to occur within 2 minutes of the first documented, pulseless rhythm. Survival time decreases for every minute that defibrillation is delayed. Following defibrillation, high-quality chest compressions are resumed immediately. Survival after cardiac arrest has been improved by extensive education of health care providers and by the use of AEDs.

Advanced Cardiovascular Life Support

During a resuscitation, an advanced airway (e.g., endotracheal tube, tracheal tube) may be placed by a primary provider, nurse anesthetist, or respiratory therapist to ensure a patent airway and adequate ventilation. Following confirmation of the placement of airway (auscultation of breath sounds, observation of equal chest expansion, or a carbon dioxide detector), positive-pressure ventilation should be delivered without pausing chest compressions at a rate of one breath every 6 seconds, or 10 breaths/min (Kleinman, Goldberger, Rea, et al., 2017; Panchal et al., 2019).

Specific subsequent advanced support interventions depend on the assessment of the patient's condition and response to therapy. For example, if asystole is detected on the monitor, CPR is continued while IV or intraosseous (IO) epinephrine is given. Additional medications (Table 25-4) may be indicated for the patient during and after resuscitation.

Each person on an effective Advanced Cardiac Life Support (ACLS) team, called a *CPR team* or sometimes a *code team*, has delineated roles. An efficient code team is characterized by individual members who are knowledgeable about their position and responsibilities. This ensures direct and clear lines of communication, effective team work, and a safe environment for the health care team and the patient (Panchal et al., 2019).

It is recommended practice to support family members of all patients who have had cardiac arrest and are undergoing resuscitation. In addition, there is clear support to have them present at the bedside if that is consonant with the patient's wishes. Written policies and procedures to support family presence during this time ought to be readily available for nurses and staff to easily access. Studies demonstrate family presence does not disrupt patient care, has no negative outcomes during the resuscitation event, and results in no adverse psychological effects (American Association of Critical-Care Nurses [AACN], 2016).

CPR is stopped when vital signs are detected or the patient responds. If the patient does not respond to interventions, the resuscitation effort may be stopped by the code team leader or other provider in charge of the resuscitation after options have been exhausted. Many factors are considered in the decision,

TABLE 25-4 Medications Used in Cardiopulmonary Resuscitation

Agent and Action	Indications	Nursing Considerations
Epinephrine—vasopressor used to optimize BP and cardiac output; improves perfusion and myocardial contractility	Given to patients in cardiac arrest caused by asystole, pulseless electrical activity, pulseless VT or VF	Administer 1 mg every 3–5 min by IV push or IO push. Follow peripheral IV administration with 20-mL saline flush and elevate extremity for 10–20 s.
Norepinephrine—vasopressor given to increase BP	Given for hypotension and shock	Administer 0.1–0.5 mcg/kg/min as IV infusion, preferably through a central line.
Dopamine—vasopressor given to increase BP and contractility	Given for hypotension and shock	Administer 5–10 mcg/kg/min as IV infusion, preferably through a central line.
Atropine—blocks parasympathetic action; increases SA node automaticity and AV conduction	Given to patients with symptomatic bradycardia (i.e., hemodynamically unstable with hypotension)	Administer 0.5-mg IV push; may repeat to dose of 3 mg, follow with saline flush.
Amiodarone—acts on sodium–potassium and calcium channels to prolong action potential and refractory period	Used to treat pulseless VT and VF unresponsive to shock delivery	Administer 300 mg IV; may give second dose of 150 mg in 3–5 min.
Sodium bicarbonate (NaHCO ₃)—corrects metabolic acidosis	Given to correct metabolic acidosis that is refractory to standard advanced cardiac life support interventions (cardiopulmonary resuscitation, intubation, and respiratory management)	Administer initial dose of 1 mEq/kg IV/IO; then administer dose based on base deficit. Recognize that to prevent development of rebound metabolic alkalosis, complete correction of acidosis is not indicated.
Magnesium sulfate—promotes adequate functioning of cellular sodium–potassium pump	Given to patients with torsade de pointes, a type of VT	May administer 1–2 g diluted in 10 mL D ₅ W over 5–20 min.

AV, atrioventricular; BP, blood pressure; D₅W, dextrose 5% in water; IO, intraosseous; IV, intravenous; SA, sinoatrial; VF, ventricular fibrillation; VT, ventricular tachycardia. Adapted from American Heart Association. (2019b). Part 7: Adult advanced cardiovascular life support. Resuscitation science: CPR and ECC guidelines. Retrieved on 12/9/2019 at: www.eccguidelines.heart.org/circulation/cpr-ecc-guidelines/part-7-adult-advanced-cardiovascular-life-support

such as the initiating arrhythmia, potential etiology, length of time for initiation of life support, the patient's response to treatment, and the patient's overall clinical status.



Follow-Up Monitoring and Care

The care provided to the patient following resuscitation is another determinant of survival (AHA, 2017). A 12-lead ECG is performed to detect any new ST segment elevation or myocardial ischemia (see Chapter 23). Continuous ECG monitoring and frequent blood pressure assessments are essential until hemodynamic stability is established and blood pressure is kept in a range to support adequate perfusion. Factors that precipitated the arrest such as arrhythmias or electrolyte or metabolic imbalances are identified and treated.

Following resuscitation and the return of spontaneous circulation, patients who are comatose may benefit from targeted temperature management (TTM). With TTM, core body temperature is decreased to 32° and 36°C (89.6° to 96.8°F) for at least 24 hours. This induced hypothermia decreases the cerebral metabolic rate and need for oxygen. Similarly, hyperthermic conditions, such as fever, are avoided to reduce oxygen demands (Callaway, Donnino, Fink, et al., 2015).

Advances in cardiac care, such as new techniques for effective resuscitation and postresuscitation hypothermia, have improved outcomes for patients. Research studies demonstrate better neurologic recovery and overall survival for patients when the correct algorithms and team dynamics are used after cardiac arrest; there is hope for even better outcomes in the future.

disoriented; she asks you why she is in the hospital. You call the rapid response team, and the following are prescribed: chest x-ray, arterial blood gases and basic metabolic panel, furosemide 40 mg IV, oxygen per nasal cannula to maintain a saturation greater than 94%. Place your planned interventions in priority order and explain your rationale.

REFERENCES

*Asterisk indicates nursing research.
**Double asterisk indicates classic reference.

Books

- Bickley, L. S. (2017). *Bates' guide to physical examination and history taking* (12th ed.). Philadelphia, PA: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.
- Burchum, J. R., & Rosenthal, L. D. (2019). *Lehne's pharmacology for nursing care* (10th ed.). St. Louis, MO: Elsevier.
- McCance, K. L., Huether, S. E., Brashers, V. L., et al. (2019). *Pathophysiology: The biologic basis for disease in adults and children* (8th ed.). St. Louis, MO: Elsevier.
- Norris, T. L. (2019). *Porth's pathophysiology* (10th ed.). Philadelphia, PA: Wolters Kluwer.
- Urden, L. D., Stacy, K. M., & Lough, M. E. (2018). *Critical care nursing* (8th ed.). St. Louis, MO: Elsevier.
- Wiegand, D. (2017). *AACN procedure manual for high acuity, progressive, and critical care* (7th ed.). St. Louis, MO: Elsevier.

Journals and Electronic Documents

- Albert, N. M., Barnason, S., Deswal, A., et al. (2015). Transitions of care in heart failure: A scientific statement from the American Heart Association. *Circulation & Heart Failure*, 8(2), 384–409.
- American Association of Critical-Care Nurses (AACN). (2016). AACN practice alert: Family presence during resuscitation and invasive procedures. *Critical Care Nurse*, 36(1), e11–e14.
- American Heart Association (AHA). (2017). Get with the guidelines: Resuscitation fact sheet. Retrieved on 9/14/2019 at: www.heart.org/en/professional/quality-improvement/get-with-the-guidelines/get-with-the-guidelines-resuscitation/get-with-the-guidelines-resuscitation-overview
- American Heart Association (AHA). (2019a). What is heart failure? Retrieved on 10/24/2019 at: www.heart.org/en/health-topics/heart-failure/what-is-heart-failure
- American Heart Association (AHA). (2019b). Part 7: Adult advanced cardiovascular life support. Resuscitation science: CPR and ECC guidelines. Retrieved on 12/9/2019 at: www.eccguidelines.heart.org/circulation/cpr-ecc-guidelines/part-7-adult-advanced-cardiovascular-life-support
- Ayres, J. K., & Maani, C. V. (2019). Milrinone. *StatPearls*. Retrieved on 10/24/2019 at: www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK532943
- Benjamin, E. J., Muntner, P., Alonso, A., et al. (2019). Heart disease and stroke statistics—2019 update. *Circulation*, 139(10), e56–e528.
- Borlaug, B. A., & Colucci, W. S. (2019). Treatment and prognosis of heart failure with preserved ejection fraction. *UpToDate*. Retrieved on 12/6/2019 at: www.uptodate.com/contents/treatment-and-prognosis-of-heart-failure-with-preserved-ejection-fraction
- Callaway, C. W., Donnino, M. W., Fink, E. L., et al. (2015). Part 8: Post-Cardiac Arrest Care: 2015 American Heart Association Guidelines update for cardiopulmonary resuscitation and emergency cardiovascular care. *Circulation*, 132, S465–S482.
- Cattadori, G., Segurini, C., Picozzi, A., et al. (2018). Exercise and heart failure: An update. *ESC Heart Failure*, 5(2), 222–232.
- Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). (2017). National Center for Health Statistics: Leading causes of death. Retrieved on 12/5/2019 at: www.cdc.gov/nchs/fastats/leading-causes-of-death.htm
- Colucci, W. S. (2019). Treatment of acute decompensated heart failure: Components of therapy. *UpToDate*. Retrieved on 12/7/2019 at: www.uptodate.com/contents/treatment-of-acute-decompensated-heart-failure-components-of-therapy

CRITICAL THINKING EXERCISES

1 ipcc After recently being discharged from the hospital with an episode of acute decompensated HFREF, a 62-year-old man presents to the cardiology clinic where you work. You note that this was the third hospitalization for this patient within the past 6 months. The patient is a widower, lives alone in a two-story home without a bathroom or bedroom on the first floor, and has been receiving disability benefits for several years. Identify how you intend to further assess the patient. What questions will you ask him? Which community-based resources and health care team members could be mobilized to facilitate his transition from the hospital-based setting to the community setting so that he avoids continued rehospitalization?

2 ebp You are a nurse educator working in a home health agency. You are tasked with presenting an educational session on HF self-care strategies. Using knowledge of evidence-based practice guidelines, list the most important topics to cover. Consider gender differences, medications, dietary recommendations, and suggestions for exercise.

3 pqi A 75-year-old woman with an acute MI is admitted to the unit where you work as a staff nurse. You assess the patient and find that she is developing a cough, an increasing respiratory rate (32 breaths/min), and pink-tinged sputum. The patient seems agitated and becomes

- Colucci, W. S., & Dunlay, S. M. (2017). Clinical manifestations and diagnosis of advanced heart failure. *UpToDate*. Retrieved on 12/6/2019 at: www.uptodate.com/contents/clinical-manifestations-and-diagnosis-of-advanced-heart-failure
- Costanzo, M. R. (2019). Ultrafiltration in acute heart failure. *Cardiac Failure Review*, 5(1), 9–18.
- Cross, S. H., Kamal, A. H., Taylor, D. H., et al. (2019). Hospice use among patients with heart failure. *Cardiac Failure Review*, 5(2), 93–98.
- Cyrille, N. B., & Patel, S. R. (2017). Late in-hospital management of patients hospitalized with acute heart failure. *Progress in Cardiovascular Diseases*, 60(2), 198–204.
- Dumitru, I. (2018). Heart failure. *Medscape*. Retrieved on 12/6/2019 at: www.emedicine.medscape.com/article/163062-overview
- Esquivel, J., White, M., Carroll, M., et al. (2018). Teach-back is an effective strategy for educating older heart failure patients. *Circulation*, 124(suppl. 21), Abstract 10786.
- Gulati, G., & Udelson, J. E. (2018). Heart failure with improved ejection fraction: Is it possible to escape one's past? *Journal of American Cardiology: Heart Failure*, 6(9), 725–733.
- *Hodson, A. R., Peacock, S., & Holtzlander, L. (2019). Family caregiving for persons with advanced heart failure: An integrative review. *Palliative and Supportive Care*. doi:10.1017/S1478951519000245
- Hoit, B. D. (2019). Diagnosis and treatment of pericardial effusion. *UpToDate*. Retrieved on 9/11/2019 at: www.uptodate.com/contents/diagnosis-and-treatment-of-pericardial-effusion
- *Jiang, Y., Shorey, S., Seah, B., et al. (2018). The effectiveness of psychological interventions on self-care, psychological and health outcomes in patients with chronic heart failure—A systematic review and meta-analysis. *International Journal of Nursing Studies*, 78, 16–25.
- Jones, C. D., Bowles, K. H., Richard, A., et al. (2017). High-value home health care for patients with heart failure. *Circulation*, 10(5), 1–5.
- Kleinman, M. E., Goldberger, Z. D., Rea, T., et al. (2017). American Heart Association focused update on adult basic life support and cardiopulmonary resuscitation quality an update to the American Heart Association guidelines for cardiopulmonary resuscitation and emergency cardiovascular care. *Circulation*, 137(1), e7–e13.
- Koehler, F., Koehler, K., Deckwart, O., et al. (2018). Efficacy of telemedical interventional management in patients with heart failure (TIM-HF2): A randomised, controlled, parallel-group, unmasked trial. *The Lancet*, 392(10152), 1047–1057.
- Koruth, J. S., Lala, A., Pinney, S., et al. (2017). The clinical use of ivabradine. *Journal of the American College of Cardiology*, 70(14), 1777–1784.
- Malotte, K., Saguros, A., & Groninger, H. (2018). Continuous cardiac inotropes in patients with end-stage heart failure: An evolving experience. *Journal of Pain and Symptom Management*, 55(1), 159–163.
- *Meraz, R. (2020). Medication nonadherence or self-care? Understanding the medication decision-making process and experiences of older adults with heart failure. *Journal of Cardiovascular Nursing*, 35(1), 26–34.
- Meyer, T. E. (2019a). Approach to acute decompensated heart failure in adults. *UpToDate*. Retrieved on 10/22/2019 at: www.uptodate.com/contents/approach-to-acute-decompensated-heart-failure-in-adults
- Meyer, T. E. (2019b). Initial pharmacologic therapy of heart failure with reduced ejection fraction in adults. *UpToDate*. Retrieved on 12/6/2019 at: www.uptodate.com/contents/overview-of-the-management-of-heart-failure-with-reduced-ejection-fraction-in-adults
- O'Connor, C. M. (2017). High heart failure readmission rates: Is it the health system's fault? *Journal of the American College of Cardiology*, 5(5), 393.
- Panchal, A. R., Berg, K. M., Hirsch, K. G., et al. (2019). 2019 American Heart Association focused update on advanced cardiovascular life support: Use of advanced airways, vasopressors, and extracorporeal cardiopulmonary resuscitation during cardiac arrest. *Circulation*, 140(24), e881–e894.
- Piña, I. L. (2019). Cardiac rehabilitation in patients with heart failure. *UpToDate*. Retrieved on 9/11/2019 at: www.uptodate.com/contents/cardiac-rehabilitation-in-patients-with-heart-failure
- Schwartz, J. B., Schmader, K. E., Hanlon, J. T., et al. (2018). Pharmacotherapy in older adults with cardiovascular disease: Report from an American College of Cardiology, American Geriatrics Society, and the National Institute on Aging workshop. *Journal of Geriatrics Society*, 67(2), 371–380.
- U.S. Department of Health and Human Services (HHS). (2019). Hospital quality overview. Retrieved on 9/6/2019 at: www.cms.gov/Medicare/Medicare-Fee-for-Service-Payment/AcuteInpatientPPS/Readmissions-Reduction-Program.html
- van der Meer, P., Gaggin, H. K., & Dec, G. W. (2019). ACC/AHA versus ESC guidelines on heart failure, JACC guideline comparison. *Journal of the American College of Cardiology*, 73(21), 2757–2768.
- **Yancy, C. W., Jessup, M., Bozkurt, B., et al. (2013). 2013 ACCF/AHA Guideline for the management of heart failure. A report of the American College of Cardiology Foundation/American Heart Association Task Force on Practice Guidelines. *Circulation*, 128(16), e240–e327.
- Yancy, C. W., Jessup, M., Bozkurt, B., et al. (2017). ACC/AHA/HFSA Focused Update of the 2013 ACCF/AHA Guideline for the Management of Heart Failure. A report of the American College of Cardiology/American Heart Association Task Force on Clinical Practice Guidelines and the Heart Failure Society of America. *Circulation*, 136(6), e137–e161.
- Yancy, C. W., Jessup, M., Bozkurt, B., et al. (2016). ACC/AHA/HFSA focused update on new pharmacological therapy for heart failure: An update of the 2013 ACCF/AHA guideline for the management of heart failure: A report of the American College of Cardiology Foundation/American Heart Association Task Force on Clinical Practice Guidelines and the Heart Failure Society of America. *Circulation*, 134(13), e282–e293.

Resources

- American Association of Heart Failure Nurses (AAHFN), www.aahfn.org
- American College of Cardiology (ACC), www.acc.org
- American Heart Association (AHA), www.heart.org
- Heart Failure Society of America (HFSA), www.hfsa.org
- National Heart, Lung, and Blood Institute, www.nhlbi.nih.gov